

# English: Translation Notes for Luke

## Formatted for Translators

©2022 Wycliffe Associates

Released under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Bible Text: The English Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB)

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English Unlocked Literal Bible is based on the unfoldingWord® Literal Text, CC BY-SA 4.0. The original work of the unfoldingWord® Literal Text is available at <https://unfoldingword.bible/ult/>.

The ULB is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Notes: English ULB Translation Notes

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English ULB Translation Notes is based on the unfoldingWord translationNotes, under CC BY-SA 4.0. The original unfoldingWord work is available at <https://unfoldingword.bible/utn>.

The ULB Notes is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

To view a copy of the CC BY-SA 4.0 license visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/>

Below is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license.

You are free to:

Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format. Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

Under the following conditions:

Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: "Original work available at <https://BibleInEveryLanguage.org>."

Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.

ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original. No additional restrictions — You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

Notices:

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.



# Introduction to the Gospel of Luke

## Part 1: General Introduction

### Outline of the Book of Luke

Introduction and purpose for writing (1:1-4) Birth of Jesus and his preparation for his ministry (1:5-4:13) Jesus's ministry in Galilee (4:14-9:50) Jesus's journey to Jerusalem Discipleship (9:51-11:13) Conflict and Jesus's grief (11:14-14:35) Parables about things that are lost and found. Parables about honesty and dishonesty (15:1-16:31) Kingdom of God (17:1-19:27) Jesus's entry into Jerusalem (19:28-44) Jesus in Jerusalem (19:45-21:4) Jesus's teaching about his second coming (21:5-36) Jesus's death, burial, and resurrection (22:1-24:53)

### What is the Gospel of Luke about?

The Gospel of Luke is one of four books in the New Testament that describe some of the life of Jesus Christ. The authors of the gospels wrote about different aspects of who Jesus was and what he did. Luke wrote his gospel for a person named Theophilus. Luke wrote an accurate description of the life of Jesus so that Theophilus would be certain of what is true. However, Luke expected the gospel to encourage all believers, not just Theophilus.

### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "The Gospel of Luke" or "The Gospel according to Luke." Or they may choose a title that may be clearer, for example, "The Good News about Jesus that Luke wrote."

### Who wrote the Book of Luke?

This book does not give the name of the author. The same person who wrote this book also wrote the Book of Acts. In parts of the Book of Acts, the author uses the word "we." This indicates that the author traveled with Paul. Most scholars think that Luke was this person traveling with Paul. Therefore, since early Christian times, most Christians have thought Luke was the author of both the Book of Luke and the Book of Acts.

Luke was a medical doctor. His way of writing shows that he was an educated man. He was probably a Gentile. Luke himself probably did not witness what Jesus said and did. But he said that he talked to many people who did.

## Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

### What are the roles of women in the Gospel of Luke?

Luke described women in a very positive way in his gospel. For example, he often showed women being more faithful to God than most men. (See: faithful)

### Why does Luke write so much about the final week of Jesus's life?

Luke wrote much about Jesus's final week. He wanted his readers to think deeply about Jesus's final week and his death on the cross. He wanted people to understand that Jesus willingly died on the cross so that God could forgive them for sinning against him. (See: sin)

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### What are the Synoptic Gospels?

The Gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke are called the Synoptic Gospels because they have many similar passages. The word "synoptic" means to "see together."

The texts are considered "parallel" when they are the same or almost the same among two or three gospels. When translating parallel passages, translators should use the same wording and make them as similar as possible.

### Why does Jesus refer to himself as the "Son of Man"?

In the gospels, Jesus called himself the "Son of Man." It is a reference to Daniel 7:13-14. In this passage there is a person described as a "son of man." That means the person was someone who looked like a human being. God gave authority to the son of man to rule over the nations forever. And all the people will worship him forever.

Jews of Jesus's time did not use "Son of Man" as a title for anyone. Therefore, Jesus used it for himself to help them understand who he truly was. (See: sonofman)

Translating the title "Son of Man" can be difficult in many languages. Readers may misunderstand a literal translation. Translators can consider alternatives, such as "The Human One." It may also be helpful to include a footnote to explain the title.

### What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Luke?

The following verses are not in the earliest manuscripts. The ULB and UDB include these verses, but some other versions do not.

"Then an angel from heaven appeared to him, strengthening him. Being in agony, he prayed more earnestly, and his sweat became like great drops of blood falling down upon the ground." (22:43-44) "Jesus said, "Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing." (23:34)

The following verse is not included in many modern versions. Some versions put it into square brackets. Translators are advised not to translate this verse. However, if in the translators' region there are older versions of the Bible that include

this verse, the translators can include it. If they are translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([ ]) to indicate that it was probably not original to Luke's Gospel.

"For he was required to release one prisoner during the feast" (23:17)

---

## Chapter 1

# Luke 1 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 1:46-55, 68-79.

## Special concepts in this chapter

"He will be called John"

Most people in the ancient Near East would give a child the same name as someone in their family. People were surprised that Elizabeth and Zechariah named their son John, because there was no one else in their family with that name.

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

Luke's language is simple and straightforward. He does not use many figures of speech.

## Links:

[Luke 1:1 Notes](#) [Luke intro](#)

---

### Luke 1:1

General Information:

Luke explains why he writes to Theophilus.

of the things that have been accomplished among us

"about those things that have happened among us" or

"about those events that have happened among us"

among us

No one knows for sure who Theophilus was. If he was a Christian, the word "us" here would include him and so be inclusive, and if not, it would be exclusive.

Luke 1:2

were eyewitnesses and servants of the word

An "eyewitness" is a person who saw something happen, and a servant of the word is a person who serves God by telling people God's message. You may need to make it clear how they were servants of the word. Alternate translation: "saw what had happened and served God by telling people his message"

servants of the word

The word "word" is a synecdoche for a message made up of many words. Alternate translation: "servants of the message" or "servants of God's message"

Luke 1:3

accurately investigated

"carefully researched." Luke was careful to find out exactly what happened. He probably talked to the different people who saw what happened to make sure that what he wrote down about these events was correct.

most excellent Theophilus

Luke said this to show honor and respect for Theophilus. This may mean that Theophilus was an important government official. This section should use the style that your culture uses to address people of high status. Some people may prefer to also put this greeting at the beginning and say, "To most excellent Theophilus" or "Dear most excellent Theophilus."

most excellent

"honorable" or "noble"

Theophilus

This name means "friend of God." It may describe this man's character or it may have been his actual name. Most translations have it as a name.

Luke 1:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 1:5

General Information:

Zechariah and Elizabeth are introduced. Verses 5-7 give background information about them.

Connecting Statement:

The angel prophesies the birth of John.

In the days of Herod, king of Judea

The phrase "In the days of" is used to indicate a new event. Alternate translation: "During the time that King Herod ruled over Judea"

there was a certain

"there was a particular" or "there was a." This is a way of introducing a new character in a story. Consider how your language does this.

division

It is understood that this refers to the priests. Alternate translation: "division of priests" or "group of priests"

of Abijah

"who descended from Abijah." Abijah was an ancestor of this group of priests and all of them were descended from Aaron, who was the first Israelite priest.

Luke 1:6

before God

"in God's sight" or "in God's opinion"

all the commandments and statutes of the Lord

"all that the Lord had commanded and required"

Luke 1:7

But

This contrast word shows that what follows here is the opposite of what is expected. People expected that if they did what was right, God would allow them to have children.

Although this couple did what was right, they did not have any children.

they were both advanced in their days

This is a euphemism that says that they were very old.

Alternate translation: "they had both lived many days" or "they had both lived many years" or "they were both very old"

Luke 1:8

Now it came about

This phrase is used to mark a shift in the story from the background information to the participants.

Zechariah was in God's presence, carrying out the priestly duties

It is implied that Zechariah was in God's temple and that these priestly duties were part of worshipping God.

in the order of his division

"when it was his group's turn" or "when the time came for his group to serve"

Luke 1:9

According to the customary way of choosing which priest would ... burn incense

This sentence gives us information about priestly duties.

the customary way

"the traditional method" or "the usual way"

chosen by lot

A lot was a marked stone that was thrown or rolled on the ground in order to decide something. The priests believed that God guided the lot to show them which priest he wanted them to choose.

to burn incense

The priests were to burn sweet-smelling incense as an offering to God each morning and evening on a special altar inside the temple.

Luke 1:10

The whole crowd of people

"A large number of people" or "Many people"

outside

The courtyard was the enclosed area surrounding the temple. Alternate translation: "outside the temple building" or "in the courtyard outside the temple"

at the hour

"at the set time." It is unclear if this was the morning or evening time for the incense offering.

Luke 1:11

Connecting Statement:

While Zechariah does his duty in the temple, an angel comes from God to give him a message.

Now

This word marks the beginning of the action in the story. appeared to him

"suddenly came to him" or "was suddenly there with Zechariah." This expresses that the angel was present with Zechariah, and not simply a vision.

Luke 1:12

Zechariah ... was troubled ... fear fell on him

These two phrases mean the same thing, and emphasize how afraid Zechariah was.

When Zechariah saw him

"When Zechariah saw the angel." Zechariah was afraid because the appearance of the angel was frightening. He

had not done anything wrong, so he was not afraid that the angel would punish him.

fear fell on him

Fear is described as if it was something that attacked or overpowered Zechariah.

Luke 1:13

Do not be afraid

"Stop being afraid of me" or "You do not need to be afraid of me"

your prayer has been heard

This can be stated in active form. It is implied that God will give Zechariah what he has asked for. Alternate translation:

"God has heard your prayer and will give you what you have asked for"

bear you a son

"have a son for you" or "give birth to your son"

Luke 1:14

You will have joy and gladness

The words "joy" and "gladness" mean the same thing and are used to emphasize how great the joy will be. Alternate translation: "you will have great joy" or "you will be very glad"

at his birth

"because of his birth"

Luke 1:15

For he will be great

"This is because he will be great." Zechariah and the "many" will rejoice because John will be "great in the sight of the Lord." The rest of verse 15 tells how God wants John to live.

he will be great in the sight of the Lord

"he will be a very important person for the Lord" or "God will consider him to be very important"

he will be filled with the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit will empower him" or "the Holy Spirit will guide him" Make sure it does not sound similar to what an evil spirit might do to a person.

from his mother's womb

"even while he is in his mother's womb" or "even before he is born"

Luke 1:16

Many of the descendants of Israel will be turned to the Lord their God

Here "be turned" is a metaphor for a person repenting and worshipping the Lord. This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: "He will cause many of the people of Israel to repent and worship the Lord their God"

Luke 1:17

will go before the face of the Lord

Before the Lord comes, he will go and announce to the people that the Lord will come to them.

the face of the Lord

Here "the face of" someone can be an idiom that refers to the that person's presence. It is sometimes omitted in translation. Alternate translation: "the Lord"

in the spirit and power of Elijah

"with the same spirit and power that Elijah had." The word "spirit" either refers to God's Holy Spirit or to Elijah's attitude or way of thinking. Make sure that the word

"spirit" does not mean ghost or evil spirit.  
 turn the hearts of the fathers to the children  
 "persuade fathers to care about their children again" or  
 "cause fathers to restore their relationships with their children"  
 turn the hearts  
 The heart is spoken of as if it were something that could be turned to go in a different direction. This refers to changing someone's attitude toward something.  
 the disobedient  
 Here this refers to people who do not obey the Lord.  
 make ready for the Lord a people prepared for him  
 What the people will be prepared to do can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "make ready for the Lord a people who are prepared to believe his message"  
 Luke 1:18  
 How can I know this?  
 "How can I know for sure that what you said will happen?"  
 Here, "know" means to learn by experience, suggesting Zechariah was asking for a sign as proof. Alternate translation: "What can you do to prove to me that this will happen?"  
 my wife is advanced in her days  
 This is a euphemism that says that she was very old. See how you translated similar words in [Luke 1:7]  
 Luke 1:19  
 I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God  
 This is stated as a rebuke to Zechariah. The presence of Gabriel, coming directly from God, should be enough proof for Zechariah.  
 who stands  
 "who serves"  
 I was sent to speak to you  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God sent me to speak to you"  
 Luke 1:20  
 Behold  
 "Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important"  
 silent, unable to speak  
 These mean the same thing, and are repeated to emphasize the completeness of his silence. Alternate translation: "completely unable to speak" or "not able to speak at all"  
 not believe my words  
 "not believe what I said"  
 at the right time  
 "at the appointed time"  
 Luke 1:21  
 Now  
 This marks a shift in the story from what happened inside the temple to what happened outside. Alternate translation: "While that was happening" or "While the angel and Zechariah were talking"  
 Luke 1:22  
 They realized that he had seen a vision while he was in the temple. He kept on making signs to them and remained silent  
 These things probably happened at the same time, and Zechariah's signs helped the people understand that he had had a vision. It might be helpful to your audience to change

the order to show that. Alternate translation: "He kept on making signs to them and remained silent. So they realized that he had seen a vision while he was in the temple"  
 a vision  
 The earlier description indicated that Gabriel actually came to Zechariah in the temple. The people, not knowing that, assumed Zechariah saw a vision.  
 Luke 1:23  
 It came about  
 This phrase moves the story ahead to when Zechariah's service was ended.  
 he went to his house  
 Zechariah did not live in Jerusalem, where the temple was located. He traveled to his home town.  
 Luke 1:24  
 After these days  
 The phrase "these days" refers to the time Zechariah was serving in the temple. It is possible to state more clearly what this refers to. Alternate translation: "After Zechariah's time of serving at the temple"  
 his wife  
 "Zechariah's wife"  
 kept herself hidden  
 "did not leave her house"  
 Luke 1:25  
 This is what the Lord has done for me  
 This phrase refers to the fact that the Lord allowed her to become pregnant.  
 This is what  
 This is a positive exclamation. She is very happy with what the Lord has done for her.  
 looked at me with favor  
 "to look at" here is an idiom that means "to treat" or "to deal with." Alternate translation: "regarded me kindly" or "had pity on me"  
 my shame  
 This refers to the shame she felt when she was not able to have children.  
 Luke 1:26  
 In the sixth month  
 "in the sixth month of Elizabeth's pregnancy." It may be necessary to state this clearly if it would be confused with the sixth month of the year.  
 the angel Gabriel was sent from God  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God told the angel Gabriel to go"  
 Luke 1:27  
 a virgin engaged to ... Joseph  
 Mary's parents had agreed that Mary would marry Joseph. Though they had not had sexual relations, Joseph would have thought and spoken of her as his wife.  
 who was a descendant of David  
 "he belonged to the same tribe as King David"  
 the virgin's name was Mary  
 This introduces Mary as a new character in the story.  
 Luke 1:28  
 He came to her  
 "The angel came to Mary"  
 Greetings

This was a common greeting. It means: "Rejoice" or "Be glad."

you who are highly favored!

"you who have received great grace!" or "you who have received special kindness!"

The Lord is with you

"with you" here is an idiom that implies support and acceptance. Alternate translation: "The Lord is pleased with you"

Luke 1:29

she was very confused by his words, and she wondered what kind of greeting this could be

Mary understood the meaning of the individual words, but she did not understand why the angel said this amazing greeting to her.

Luke 1:30

Do not be afraid, Mary

The angel does not want Mary to be afraid of his appearance, because God sent him with a positive message.

you have found favor with God

The idiom "to find favor" means to be positively received by someone. The sentence can be altered to show God as the actor. Alternate translation: "God has decided to give you his grace" or "God is showing you his kindness"

Luke 1:31

you will conceive in your womb and bear a son ... Jesus

Mary will bear "a son" who will be called "the Son of the Most High." Jesus is therefore a human son born of a human mother, and he is also the Son of God. These terms should be translated very carefully.

Luke 1:32

the Son of the Most High

Mary will bear "a son" who will be called "the Son of the Most High." Jesus is therefore a human son born of a human mother, and he is also the Son of God. These terms should be translated very carefully.

will be called

Possible meanings are 1) "people will call him" or 2) "God will call him"

Son of the Most High

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

give him the throne of his ancestor David

The throne represents the king's authority to rule. Alternate translation: "give him authority to rule as king as his ancestor David did"

Luke 1:33

there will be no end to his kingdom

The negative phrase "no end" emphasizes that it continues forever. It could also be stated with a positive phrase.

Alternate translation: "his kingdom will never end"

Luke 1:34

How will this happen

Though Mary did not understand how it could happen, she did not doubt that it would happen.

I have not known any man

Mary used this polite expression to say that she had not engaged in sexual activity. Alternate translation: "I am a virgin"

Luke 1:35

The Holy Spirit will overshadow you

The process of Mary's conception would begin with the Holy Spirit coming to her.

the power of the Most High

It was God's "power" that would supernaturally cause Mary to become pregnant even while she still remained a virgin.

Make sure this does not imply any physical or sexual union—this was a miracle.

will overshadow you

"will cover you like a shadow"

So the holy one to be born will be called the Son of God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So the holy one who will be born they will call the Son of God" or "So the baby that will be born will be holy, and people will call him the Son of God"

the holy one

"the holy child" or "the holy baby"

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

Luke 1:36

See, your relative

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: your relative"

your relative Elizabeth

If you need to state a specific relationship, Elizabeth was probably Mary's aunt or great-aunt.

has also conceived a son in her old age

"Elizabeth has also become pregnant with a son even though she is already very old" or "Elizabeth, even though she is old, has also become pregnant and will bear a son."

Make sure it does not sound as though both Mary and Elizabeth were old when they conceived.

the sixth month for her

"the sixth month of her pregnancy"

Luke 1:37

For nothing

"Because nothing" or "This shows that nothing"

nothing will be impossible for God

Elizabeth's pregnancy was proof that God was able to do anything—even enable Mary to become pregnant without her sleeping with a man. The double negatives in this statement can be stated with positive terms. Alternate translation: "everything will be possible for God" or "God can do anything"

Luke 1:38

See, I am the female servant

"Here I am, the female servant" or "I am glad to be the female servant." She is responding humbly and willingly.

I am the female servant of the Lord

Choose an expression that shows her humility and obedience to the Lord. She was not boasting about being the Lord's servant.

Let it be for me

"Let this happen to me." Mary was expressing her willingness for the things to happen that the angel had told her were about to happen.

Luke 1:39

Connecting Statement:

Mary goes to visit her relative Elizabeth, who is going to

give birth to John.

arose

This idiom means she not only stood up, but also "got ready." Alternate translation: "started out" or "got ready" the hilly country  
"the hilly area" or "the mountainous part of Israel"

Luke 1:40

She went

It is implied that Mary finished her journey before she went in to Zechariah's house. This could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "When she arrived, she went"

Luke 1:41

Now it happened

The phrase is used to mark a new event in this part of the story.

in her womb

"in Elizabeth's womb"

jumped

moved suddenly

Luke 1:42

cried out with a loud shout and said

The phrases "cried out" and "loud shout" mean the same thing and are used to emphasize how excited Elizabeth was. You may want to combine them into one phrase. Alternate translation: "exclaimed loudly"

Blessed are you among women

The idiom "among women" means "more than any other woman"

the fruit of your womb

Mary's baby is spoken of as if it is the fruit that a plant produces. Alternate translation: "the baby in your womb" or "the baby you will bear"

Luke 1:43

Why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

Elizabeth is not asking for information. She was showing how surprised and happy she was that the mother of the Lord had come to her. Alternate translation: "How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!"

the mother of my Lord

It can be made clear that Elizabeth was calling Mary "the mother of my Lord" by adding the word "you." Alternate translation: "you, the mother of my Lord"

Luke 1:44

For see

This phrase alerts Mary to pay attention to Elizabeth's surprising statement that follows.

when the sound of your greeting came to my ears

Hearing a sound is spoken of as if the sound came to the ears. Alternate translation: "when I heard the sound of your greeting"

jumped for joy

"moved suddenly with joy" or "turned forcefully because he was so happy"

Luke 1:45

Blessed is she who believed ... that were told her from the Lord

Elizabeth is talking about Mary to Mary. Alternate translation: "Blessed are you who believed ... that were told

you from the Lord"

Blessed is she who believed

The passive verb can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will bless her because she believed" there would be a fulfillment of the things  
"the things would actually happen" or "the things would come true"

the things that were told her from the Lord

The word "from" is used here instead of "by" because it was the angel Gabriel whom Mary actually heard speak

Luke 1:46

General Information:

Mary begins a song of praise to the Lord her Savior.

My soul praises

The word "soul" refers to the spiritual part of a person.

Mary is saying that her worship comes from deep inside her. Alternate translation: "My inner being praises" or "I praise"

Luke 1:47

my spirit has rejoiced

Both "soul" and "spirit" refer to the spiritual part of a person. Mary is saying that her worship comes from deep inside her. Alternate translation: "my heart has rejoiced" or "I rejoice"

has rejoiced in

"has felt very joyful about" or "was very happy about"

God my Savior

"God, the One who saves me" or "God, who saves me"

Luke 1:48

For he

"This is because he"

looked at

"looked at with concern" or "cared about"

low condition

"poverty." Mary's family was not rich.

For see

This phrase calls attention to the statement that follows.

from now on

"now and in the future"

all generations

"the people in all generations"

Luke 1:49

the Mighty One has

"God, the Powerful One, has"

his name

Here "name" refers to the entire person of God. Alternate translation: "he"

Luke 1:50

His mercy

"God's mercy"

from generation to generation

"from one generation to the next generation" or

"throughout every generation" or "to people in every time period"

Luke 1:51

displayed strength with his arm

Here "his arm" is a metonym that stands for God's power.

Alternate translation: "shown that he is very powerful"

has scattered those ... hearts



"has caused those ... hearts to run away in different directions"

who were proud about the thoughts of their hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's inner beings.

Alternate translation: "who were proud in their thoughts" or "who were proud"

Luke 1:52

He has thrown down princes from their thrones

A throne is a chair that a ruler sits on, and it is a symbol of his authority. If a prince is brought down from his throne, it means he no longer has the authority to reign. Alternate translation: "He has taken away the authority of princes" or "He has made rulers stop ruling"

raised up those of low condition

In this word picture, people who are important are higher than people who are less important. Alternate translation: "has made humble people important" or "has given honor to people whom others have not honored"

of low condition

"in poverty." See how you translated this in Luke 1:48.

Luke 1:53

He has filled the hungry ... the rich he has sent away empty

The contrast between these two opposite actions should be made clear in the translation if possible.

filled the hungry with good things

Possible meanings are 1) "given the hungry good food to eat" or 2) "given the needy good things."

Luke 1:54

General Information:

The information in verses 54 and 55 can be rearranged, as in the UDB, to make the meaning clearer.

He has given help to

"The Lord has helped"

Israel his servant

If readers confuse this with the man named Israel, it could be translated as "his servant, the nation of Israel" or "Israel, his servants."

so as to

"in order to"

to remember

God cannot forget. When God "remembers," it is an idiom that means God acts upon his earlier promise.

Luke 1:55

General Information:

The information in verses 54 and 55 can be rearranged, as in the UDB, to make the meaning clearer.

as he said to our fathers

"just as he promised our ancestors he would do." This phrase supplies background information about God's promise to Abraham. Alternate translation: "because he promised our ancestors he would be merciful"

his descendants

"Abraham's descendants"

Luke 1:56

returned to her house

"Mary returned to her (Mary's) house" or "Mary returned to her own house"

Luke 1:57

Now

This word marks the beginning of the next event in the story.

deliver her baby

"give birth to her baby"

Luke 1:58

Her neighbors and her relatives

"Elizabeth's neighbors and relatives"

shown his great mercy to her

"been very kind to her"

Luke 1:59

Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark a change in the main story. Here Luke starts to tell a new part of the story.

on the eighth day

Here "eighth day" refers to the time after the birth of the baby, counted from the first day, which was the day he was born. Alternate translation: "on the eighth day of the baby's life"

they came to circumcise the child

This was often a ceremony where one person circumcised the baby and friends were there to celebrate with the family. Alternate translation: "they came for the baby's circumcision ceremony"

They would have called him

"They were going to name him" or "They wanted to give him the name"

after the name of his father

"his father's name"

Luke 1:60

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 1:61

by this name

"by that name" or "by the same name"

Luke 1:62

They

This refers to the people who were there for the circumcision ceremony.

made signs

"motioned." Either Zechariah was unable to hear, as well as unable to speak, or the people assumed that he could not hear.

to his father

"to the baby's father"

how he wanted him to be named

"what name Zechariah wanted to give the baby"

Luke 1:63

His father asked for a writing tablet

Since he could not speak, it may be helpful to state this differently. Alternate translation: "His father indicated that he wanted them to give him a writing tablet" or "His father showed that he wanted a writing tablets"

a writing tablet

"something on which to write"

astonished

greatly surprised or amazed

Luke 1:64

his mouth was opened ... his tongue was freed

These two phrases are word pictures that together

emphasize that Zechariah was suddenly able to speak. his mouth was opened and his tongue was freed  
 These phrases can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God opened his mouth and freed his tongue"  
 Luke 1:65  
 Fear came on all who lived around them  
 "All who lived around Zechariah and Elizabeth were afraid." It may be helpful to state clearly why they were afraid. Alternate translation: "All who lived around them were in awe of God because he had done this to Zechariah" all who lived around them  
 The word "all" here is a generalization. Alternate translation: "those who lived around them" or "many who lived in that area"  
 All these matters were spread throughout all the hill country of Judea  
 The phrase "these matters were spread" is a metaphor for people talking about them. The passive verb here can also be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "All these matters were talked about by people throughout all the hill country of Judea" or "People throughout the hill country of Judea talked about all these matters"  
 Luke 1:66  
 All who heard them  
 "All who heard about these matters" stored them in their hearts  
 People carefully remembering things so that they can think about them later is spoken of as if they were putting those things safely in their hearts. Alternate translation: "kept them in mind" or "thought carefully about these matters" or "thought a lot about these events"  
 hearts, saying  
 "hearts. They asked"  
 What then will this child become?  
 "What kind of great person will this baby grow up to be?" It is also possible that this question was meant to be a statement of their surprise at what they had heard about the baby. Alternate translation: "What a great man this child will be!"  
 the hand of the Lord was with him  
 The phrase "the hand of the Lord" refers to the Lord's power. Alternate translation: "the Lord's power was with him" or "the Lord was working in him powerfully"  
 Luke 1:67  
 Connecting Statement:  
 Zechariah tells what will happen with his son John.  
 His father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit and prophesied  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit filled his father Zechariah, and Zachariah prophesied"  
 His father  
 John's father  
 prophesied, saying  
 Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotes in your language. Alternate translation: "prophesied and said" or "prophesied, and this is what he said"  
 Luke 1:68  
 the God of Israel  
 "Israel" here refers to the nation of Israel. The relationship between God and Israel could be stated more directly.

Alternate translation: "the God who reigns over Israel" or "the God whom Israel worships"  
 his people  
 "God's people"  
 Luke 1:69  
 He has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David  
 The horn of an animal is a symbol of its power to defend itself. To raise up here is to bring into existence or to enable to act. The Messiah is spoken of as if he were a horn with the power to save Israel. Alternate translation: "He has brought to us someone who is in the house of his servant David with the power to save us"  
 in the house of his servant David  
 David's "house" here represents his family, specifically, his descendants. Alternate translation: "in the family of his servant David" or "who is a descendant of his servant David"  
 Luke 1:70  
 as he spoke  
 "just as God said"  
 he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets from long ago  
 God speaking by the prophets' mouths represents God causing his prophets to say what he wanted them to say. Alternate translation: "he caused his holy prophets who lived long ago to say"  
 Luke 1:71  
 salvation from our enemies  
 The abstract noun "salvation" can be expressed with the verbs "save" or "rescue." Alternate translation: "who will save us from our enemies"  
 our enemies ... all who hate us  
 These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are repeated to emphasize how strongly their enemies are against them.  
 hand  
 The hand is a metonym for the power that the person uses the hand to exercise. Alternate translation: "power" or "control"  
 Luke 1:72  
 to show mercy to  
 "to be merciful to" or "to act according to his mercy toward"  
 remember  
 Here the word "remember" means to keep a commitment or fulfill something.  
 Luke 1:73  
 the oath that he swore  
 These words refer to "his holy covenant" (Luke 1:72).  
 Luke 1:74  
 to grant to us  
 "to make it possible for us"  
 that we, having been delivered out of the hand of our enemies, would serve him without fear  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that after he rescued us from the hand of our enemies we would serve him without fear"  
 out of the hand of our enemies  
 Here "hand" refers to the control or power a person. This could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "from the

control of our enemies"

without fear

This refers back to the fear of their enemies. Alternate translation: "without being afraid of our enemies"

Luke 1:75

in holiness and righteousness

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns

"holiness" and "righteousness." Possible meanings are 1) we would serve God in holy and righteous ways. Alternate translation: "doing what is holy and righteous" or 2) we would be holy and righteous. Alternate translation: "being holy and righteous"

before him

This is an idiom which means "in his presence"

Luke 1:76

Yes, and you

Zechariah uses this phrase to begin his direct address to his son. You may have a similar way to direct speech in your language.

you, child, will be called a prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as for you, child, people will know that you are a prophet"

of the Most High

These words are a euphemism for God. Alternate

translation: "who serves the Most High" or "who speaks for God Most High"

will go before the face of the Lord

Before the Lord comes, he will go and announce to the people that the Lord will come to them. See how you translated this in Luke 1:17.

the face of the Lord

"the face of" someone can be an idiom that refers to the that person's presence. It is sometimes omitted in translation. Alternate translation: "the Lord" See how you translated this in [Luke 1:17]

to prepare his paths

This is a metaphor that means that John will prepare the people to listen to and believe the Lord's message.

Luke 1:77

to give knowledge of salvation to his people by the forgiveness of their sins

The phrase "give knowledge" is a metaphor for teaching. The abstract nouns "salvation" and "forgiveness" can be expressed with the verbs "save" and "forgive." Alternate translation: "to teach his people salvation through the forgiveness of their sins" or "to teach his people how God saves people by forgiving their sins"

Luke 1:78

because of the tender mercy of our God

It might be helpful to state that God's mercy helps people. Alternate translation: "because God is compassionate and

merciful to us"

the sunrise from on high

Light is often a metaphor for truth. Here, the Savior giving spiritual truth to people is spoken of as if he were a sunrise that shines light on the earth. Alternate translation: "the Savior, who is like a sunrise, will come from on high"

from on high

"from heaven"

Luke 1:79

to shine

Light is often a metaphor for truth. Here, the spiritual truth that the Savior will provide is spoken of as if it is a sunrise that lights up the earth

shine on

"give knowledge to" or "give spiritual light to"

those who sit in darkness and in the shadow of death

Darkness is here a metaphor for the absence of spiritual truth. Here, people who lack spiritual truth are spoken of as if they are sitting in darkness. Also "shadow of death" represents the threat of death. Alternate translation: "those who do not know the truth and are in spiritual darkness and fear dying"

guide our feet into the path of peace

Here "guide" is a metaphor for teaching, and "path of

peace" is a metaphor for living at peace with God. The

phrase "our feet" is a synecdoche that represents the whole person. Alternate translation: "teach us how to live at peace with God"

Luke 1:80

General Information:

This tells briefly about John's growing years.

Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Luke quickly moves from the birth of John to the beginning of his ministry as an adult.

became strong in spirit

"became spiritually mature" or "strengthened his relationship with God"

was in the wilderness

"lived in the wilderness." Luke does not say at what age John began to live in the wilderness.

until

This does not necessarily mark a stopping point. John continued to live out in the desert even after he started preaching publicly.

the day of his public appearance

"when he began to preach in public"

the day

This is used here in the general sense of "the time" or "the occasion."

---

## Chapter 2

# Luke 2 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 2:14, 29-32.

## Links:

## Luke 2:1

General Information:

This gives background to show why Mary and Joseph have to move at the time of Jesus's birth.

Now

This word marks the beginning of a new part of the story. it came about that

This phrase is used to show that this is the beginning of an account. If your language has a way of showing the start of an account, you may use that. Some versions do not include this phrase.

Caesar Augustus

"King Augustus" or "Emperor Augustus." Augustus was the first emperor of the Roman Empire.

sent out a decree ordering

This command was probably carried by messengers throughout the empire. Alternate translation: "sent messengers with a decree ordering"

that a census be taken of all the people living in the world

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"that they register all the people living in the world" or

"that they count all the people in the world and write down their names"

the world

Here the word "world" represents only the part of the world that Caesar August ruled. Alternate translation: "the Empire" or "the Roman world"

## Luke 2:2

Quirinius

Quirinius was appointed to be the governor of Syria.

## Luke 2:3

everyone went

"everyone started off" or "everyone was going"

his own city

This refers to the cities where people's ancestors lived.

People may have lived in a different city. Alternate translation: "the city in which his ancestors lived"

to be registered for the census

"to have his name written in the register" or "to be included in the official count"

## Luke 2:4

General Information:

The UDB rearranges verses 4 and 5 into a verse bridge in order to make it easier to shorten the sentences.

Joseph also

This introduces Joseph as a new participant in the story.

to the city of David, which is called Bethlehem

The phrase "the city of David" was a name for Bethlehem that tells why Bethlehem was important. Although it was a small town, King David was born there, and there was a prophecy that the Messiah would be born there. Alternate translation: "to Bethlehem, the city of King David" or "to Bethlehem, the town where King David was born"

because he was of the house and family line of David

"because Joseph was a descendant of David"

## Luke 2:5

to register

This means to report to the officials there so they could include him in the count. Use a term for an official government count if possible.

along with Mary

Mary traveled with Joseph from Nazareth. It is likely that women were also taxed, so Mary would have needed to travel and be registered as well.

who was engaged to him

"his fiancée" or "who was promised to him." An engaged couple was considered legally married, but there would not have been physical intimacy between them.

## Luke 2:6

General Information:

The UDB rearranges verses 6 and 7 into a verse bridge in order to keep together the details about the place they stayed.

Now it came about

This phrase marks the beginning of the next event in the story.

while they were there

"while Mary and Joseph were in Bethlehem"

the time came for her to deliver her baby

"it was time to give birth to her baby"

## Luke 2:7

wrapped him in long strips of cloth

In some cultures mothers comfort their babies by wrapping them tightly in cloth or a blanket. Alternate translation: "wrapped cloths firmly around him" or "wrapped him tightly in a blanket"

laid him in a manger

This was some kind of box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. It was most likely clean and may have had something soft and dry like hay in it as a cushion for the baby. Animals were often kept near the home to keep them secure and to feed them easily. Mary and Joseph stayed in a room that was used for animals. there was no room for them in the inn

"there was no space for them to stay in the guest room."

This was probably because so many people went to Bethlehem to register. Luke adds this as background information.

## Luke 2:8

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 2:9

An angel of the Lord

"An angel from the Lord" or "An angel who served the Lord" appeared to them

"came to the shepherds"

the glory of the Lord

The source of the bright light was the glory of the Lord, which appeared at the same time as the angel.

## Luke 2:10

Do not be afraid

"Stop being afraid"

that will bring great joy to all the people  
 "that will make all the people very happy"  
 all the people  
 Some understand this to refer to the Jewish people. Others understand it to refer to all people.  
 Luke 2:11  
 the city of David  
 This refers to Bethlehem.  
 Luke 2:12  
 This is the sign that will be given to you  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will give you this sign" or "You will see this sign from God"  
 the sign  
 "the proof." This could either be a sign to prove that what the angel was saying was true, or it could be a sign that would help the shepherds recognize the baby.  
 wrapped in strips of cloth  
 This was the normal way that mothers protected and cared for their babies in that culture. See how you translated this in [Luke 2:7]  
 lying in a manger  
 This was some kind of box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. See how you translated this in Luke 2:7.  
 Luke 2:13  
 a great multitude from heaven  
 These words could refer to a literal army of angels, or it could be a metaphor for an organized group of angels.  
 Alternate translation: "a large group of angels from heaven"  
 praising God  
 "giving praise to God"  
 Luke 2:14  
 Glory to God in the highest  
 Possible meanings are 1) "Give honor to God in the highest place" or 2) "Give the highest honor to God."  
 may there be peace on earth among people with whom he is pleased  
 "may those people on earth with whom God is pleased have peace"  
 Luke 2:15  
 It came about  
 This phrase is used to mark a shift in the story to what the shepherds did after the angels left.  
 from them  
 "from the shepherds"  
 to each other  
 "to one another"  
 Let us ... to us  
 Since the shepherds were speaking to one another, languages that have inclusive forms for "we" and "us" should use the inclusive form here.  
 Let us  
 "We should"  
 this thing that has happened  
 This refers to the birth of the baby, and not to the appearance of the angels.  
 Luke 2:16  
 lying in a manger  
 A manger is a box or frame that people put hay or other

food in for animals to eat. See how you translated this in Luke 2:7.  
 Luke 2:17  
 what had been said to them  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the angels had told the shepherds"  
 this child  
 "the baby"  
 Luke 2:18  
 what was spoken to them by the shepherds  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the shepherds told them"  
 Luke 2:19  
 treasuring them in her heart  
 A person who thinks is something is very valuable or precious is "treasuring" it. Mary considered the things she was told about her son to be very precious. Alternate translation: "carefully remembering them" or "joyfully remembering them"  
 Luke 2:20  
 shepherds returned  
 "shepherds went back to the sheep"  
 glorifying and praising God  
 These are very similar and emphasize how excited they were about what God had done. Alternate translation: "talking about and praising God's greatness"  
 Luke 2:21  
 General Information:  
 The laws God gave the Jewish believers told them when to circumcise a boy baby and what sacrifice the parents had to bring.  
 When it was the end of the eighth day  
 This phrase shows the passing of time before this new event.  
 the end of the eighth day  
 "the end of the eighth day of his life." The day he was born was counted as the first day.  
 he was named  
 Joseph and Mary gave him his name.  
 the name he had been given by the angel  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the name the angel had called him"  
 Luke 2:22  
 When the required number ... had passed  
 This shows the passing of time before this new event.  
 the required number of days  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the number of days that God required"  
 for their purification  
 "for them to become ceremonially clean." You can also state God's role. Alternate translation: "for God to consider them clean again"  
 they brought him up to the temple  
 "Mary and Joseph brought the baby up to the temple"  
 to present him to the Lord  
 "to bring him to the Lord" or "to bring him into the Lord's presence." This was a ceremony acknowledging God's claim on the firstborn children who were male.  
 Luke 2:23

As it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "As Moses wrote" or "They did this because Moses wrote"

Every male who opens the womb

This is an idiom meaning the first male born into a family.

This referred to both animals and people. Alternate

translation: "The first male that a mother gives birth to" or "Every firstborn male"

Luke 2:24

what was said in the law of the Lord

"that which the law of the Lord also says." This is a different place in the law. It refers to all males, whether firstborn or not.

Luke 2:25

Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story.

Your language may have a way of doing this.

was righteous and devout

These abstract terms can be expressed as actions. Alternate translation: "did what was right and feared God" or "obeyed God's laws and feared God"

consolation of Israel

The word "Israel" is a metonym for the people of Israel. To "console" someone is to give them comfort, or "consolation." The words "consolation of Israel" are a metonym for the Christ or Messiah who would comfort or bring consolation to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "the one who would comfort the people of Israel"

the Holy Spirit was upon him

"the Holy Spirit was with him." God was with him in a special way and gave him wisdom and direction in his life.

Luke 2:26

It had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"The Holy Spirit had shown him" or "The Holy Spirit had told him"

he would not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ

"he would see the Lord's Messiah before he died"

Luke 2:27

Led by the Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "As the Holy Spirit directed him"

came

Some languages may say "went."

into the temple

"into the temple courtyard." Only priests could enter the temple building.

the parents

"Jesus's parents"

the custom of the law

"the custom of the law of God"

Luke 2:28

he took him into his arms

"Simeon took the infant Jesus into his arms" or "Simeon held Jesus in his arms"

Luke 2:29

Now let your servant depart in peace

"I am your servant; let me depart in peace." Simeon was referring to himself.

depart

This is a euphemism meaning "die"

according to your word

"Word" here is a metonym for "promise." Alternate translation: "as you have promised"

Luke 2:30

my eyes have seen

This expression means, "I have personally seen" or "I, myself, have seen"

your salvation

This expression refers to the person who would bring salvation—the infant Jesus—whom Simeon was holding.

Alternate translation: "the savior whom you sent" or "the one whom you sent to save"

Luke 2:31

which you

Depending on how you translate the previous phrase, this may need to be changed to "whom you."

have prepared

"have planned" or "caused to happen"

Luke 2:32

A light for revelation to the Gentiles

This metaphor means that the child will help people to understand God's will. The Gentiles understanding God's will is spoken of as if they were people using physical light to see a solid object. You may need to make explicit what it is that the Gentiles will see. Alternate translation: "This child will enable the Gentiles to understand God's will as light allows people to see clearly"

for revelation

It may be necessary to state what is to be revealed.

Alternate translation: "that will reveal God's truth"

glory to your people Israel

"he will be the reason that glory will come to your people Israel"

Luke 2:33

what was said about him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that Simeon said about him"

Luke 2:34

said to Mary his mother

"said to the child's mother, Mary." Make sure it does not sound like Mary is the mother of Simeon.

Behold

Simeon used this expression to tell Mary that what he is about to say is extremely important to her.

this child is appointed for the downfall and rising up of many people in Israel

The words "downfall" and "rising up" express turning away from God and drawing closer to God. Alternate translation: "this child will cause many people in Israel to fall away from God or to rise closer to God"

Luke 2:35

a sword will pierce your own soul

This metaphor describes the deep sadness that Mary would feel. Alternate translation: "your sadness will be painful as though a sword pierced your soul"

the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's inner beings. This

can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he may reveal the thoughts of many people" or "he may reveal what many people secretly think"

Luke 2:36

A prophetess named Anna was there

This introduces a new participant into the story.

Phanuel

This is a man's name.

She was advanced in her days

This is a euphemism that says that she was very old. See how you translated similar words in [Luk 2:7]

seven years

"7 years"

after her virginity

"after she married him"

Luke 2:37

a widow for eighty-four years

Possible meanings are 1) she had been a widow for 84 years or 2) she was a widow and was now 84 years old.

never left the temple

This is probably an exaggeration meaning that she spent so much time in the temple that it seemed as though she never left it. Alternate translation: "was always at the temple" or "was often at the temple"

with fastings and prayers

"by abstaining from food on many occasions and by offering many prayers"

Luke 2:38

came near to them

"approached them" or "went to Mary and Joseph"

the redemption of Jerusalem

Here the word "redemption" is used to refer to the person who would do it. Alternate translation: "the one who would redeem Jerusalem" or "the person who would bring God's blessings and favor back to Jerusalem"

Luke 2:39

Connecting Statement:

Mary, Joseph, and Jesus leave the town of Bethlehem and return to the city of Nazareth for his childhood.

they were required to do according to the law of the Lord

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"that the law of the Lord required them to do"

their own town of Nazareth

This phrase means they lived in Nazareth. Make sure it does not sound like they owned the town. Alternate translation: "the town of Nazareth, where they lived"

Luke 2:40

full of wisdom

"becoming wiser" or "learning what was wise"

the grace of God was upon him

"God blessed him" or "God was with him in a special way"

Luke 2:41

His parents went ... Festival of the Passover

This is background information.

His parents

"Jesus's parents"

Luke 2:42

they again went up

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel,

so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem.

at the customary time

"at the normal time" or "as they did every year"

the festival

The Festival of the Passover, which involved eating a ceremonial meal.

Luke 2:43

After they had stayed the full number of days for the feast

"When the entire time for celebrating the feast was over" or

"After celebrating the feast for the required number of days"

Luke 2:44

They assumed

"They thought"

they traveled a day's journey

"they traveled one day" or "they went as far as people walk in one day"

Luke 2:45

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 2:46

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the temple

This refers to the courtyard around the temple. Only the priests were allowed in the temple. Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

in the middle of

This does not mean the exact center. Rather, it means

"among" or "together with" or "surrounded by."

the teachers

"the religious teachers" or "those who taught people about God"

Luke 2:47

All who heard him were amazed

They could not understand how a twelve-year-old boy with no religious education could answer so well.

at his understanding

"at how much he understood" or "that he understood so much about God"

his answers

"at how well he answered them" or "that he answered their questions so well"

Luke 2:48

When they saw him

"When Mary and Joseph found Jesus"

why have you treated us this way?

This was an indirect rebuke because he had not gone with them on the way back home. This caused them to worry about him. Alternate translation: "you should not have done this to us!"

Look

This word is often used to show the beginning of a new or important event. It also can be used to show where the action begins. If your language has a phrase that is used in this way, consider whether it would be natural to use it

here.

Luke 2:49

Why were you searching for me?

Jesus uses two questions to mildly rebuke his parents, and to begin to tell them that he had a purpose from his heavenly Father that they did not understand. Alternate translation: "You did not need to be concerned about me."

Did you not know ... business?

Jesus uses this second question to try to say that his parents should have known about the purpose for which his Father sent him. Alternate translation: "You should have known ... business."

about my Father's business

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus meant these words literally, to indicate that he was doing the work that his Father had given him, or 2) these words are an idiom that indicate where Jesus was, "in my Father's house." Since the next verse says that his parents did not understand what he was telling them, it would be best not to explain it more.

my Father's business

At age 12, Jesus, the Son of God, understood that God was

his real Father

Luke 2:50

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 2:51

he went back home with them

"Jesus went back home with Mary and Joseph"

was obedient to them

"obeyed them" or "was always obeying them"

treasured all these things in her heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being. Alternate translation: "carefully remembered all these things"

Luke 2:52

grow in wisdom and stature

"become wiser and stronger." These refer to mental and physical growth.

increased in favor with God and people

This refers to spiritual and social growth. These could be stated separately. Alternate translation: "God blessed him more and more, and people liked him more and more"

## Chapter 3

# Luke 3 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 3:4-6, which is from the Old Testament.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Justice

John's instructions to the soldiers and tax collectors in this chapter are not complicated. They are things that should have been obvious to them. He instructed them to live justly. (See: justice and [Luke 3:12-15](#))

### Genealogy

A genealogy is a list which records a person's ancestors or descendants. Such lists were very important in determining who had the right to be king, because the king's authority was usually passed down or inherited from his father. It was also common for other important people to have a recorded genealogy.

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Metaphor

Prophecy often involves the use of metaphors to express its meaning. Spiritual discernment is needed for proper interpretation of the prophecy. The prophecy of Isaiah is an extended metaphor describing the ministry of John the Baptist

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"(Herod) had John locked up in prison"

This event can cause confusion because the author says John was imprisoned and then says he was baptizing Jesus. The author probably uses this phrase in anticipation of Herod's imprisonment of John. This would mean that this statement is still in the future at the time of the narrative.

## Links:

[Luke 3:1 Notes](#)

Luke 3:1

General Information:

Verses 1-3 give background information to tell what is happening when Jesus's cousin John begins his ministry.

Connecting Statement:

As the prophet Isaiah had foretold, John begins to preach good news to the people.

Philip ... Lysanias

These are the names of men.

Iturea and Trachonitis ... Abilene

These are names of territories.

Luke 3:2

during the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas

"while Annas and Caiaphas were serving together as the high priest." Annas was the high priest, and the Jews

continued to recognize him as such even after the Romans



appointed his son-in-law, Caiaphas, to replace him as high priest.

the word of God came

The writer speaks of God's message as though it were a person who moved toward those who heard it. Alternate translation: "God spoke his message"

Luke 3:3

preaching a baptism of repentance

The terms "baptism" and "repentance" could be stated as actions. Alternate translation: "and he preached that people should be baptized to show that they were repenting"

for the forgiveness of sins

They would repent so that God would forgive their sins.

The term "forgiveness" can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "so that their sins would be forgiven" or "so that God would forgive their sins"

Luke 3:4

General Information:

The author, Luke, quotes a passage from Isaiah the prophet concerning John the Baptist.

As it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet,

These words introduce a quotation from the prophet Isaiah. They can be stated in active form, and the missing words can be supplied. Alternate translation: "This happened as Isaiah the prophet had written in the book that contains his words:" or "John fulfilled the message that the prophet Isaiah had written in his book:"

A voice of one crying out in the wilderness

This can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: "The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

Make ready the way of the Lord, make his paths straight

The second command explains or adds more detail to the first.

Make ready the way of the Lord

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents preparing to hear the Lord's message when he comes.

Alternate translation: "Prepare yourselves for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

the way

"the path" or "the road"

Luke 3:5

Every valley will be filled ... every mountain and hill will be made low

When people prepare the road for an important person who is coming, they cut down the high places and fill in the low places so that the road will be level. This is part of the metaphor started in the previous verse.

Every valley will be filled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They will fill in every low place in the road"

every mountain and hill will be made low

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will level every mountain and hill" or "they will remove every high place in the road"

Luke 3:6

see the salvation of God

This can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "learn how God saves people from sin"

Luke 3:7

to be baptized by him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for John to baptize them"

You offspring of vipers

This is a metaphor. Here "offspring of" means "having the characteristic of." Vipers are poisonous snakes that are dangerous and represent evil. Alternate translation: "You evil poisonous snakes" or "You are evil, like poisonous snakes"

Who warned you ... coming?

He was not really expecting them to answer. John was rebuking the people because they were asking him to baptize them so that God would not punish them, but they did not want to stop sinning. Alternate translation: "You cannot flee from God's wrath like this!" or "You cannot escape from God's wrath just by being baptized!"

from the wrath that is coming

The word "wrath" is used here to refer to God's punishment because his wrath precedes it. Alternate translation: "from the punishment that God is sending" or "from God's wrath on which he is about to act"

Luke 3:8

produce fruits that are worthy of repentance

In this metaphor, a person's behavior is compared to fruit. Just as a plant is expected to produce fruit that is appropriate for that kind of plant, a person who says that he has repented is expected to live righteously. Alternate translation: "produce the kind of fruit that shows that you have repented" or "do the good things that show that you have turned away from your sin"

to say within yourselves

"saying to yourselves" or "thinking"

We have Abraham for our father

"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are Abraham's descendants." If it is unclear why they would say this, you may also add the implied information: "so God will not punish us."

raise up children for Abraham

"create children for Abraham"

from these stones

John was probably referring to the actual stones along the Jordan River.

Luke 3:9

the ax is set against the root of the trees

The ax that is in position so it can cut the roots of a tree is a metaphor for the punishment that is about to begin. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God is like the man who has placed his ax against the root of the trees" every tree ... is chopped down and thrown into the fire "fire" here is a metaphor for punishment. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he chops down every tree ... and throws it into the fire"

Luke 3:10

asking him, saying

"asking him and said" or "asking John"

Luke 3:11

Connecting Statement:

John begins to respond to questions that people in the

crowd ask him.

answered and said to them

"answered them, saying" or "answered them" or "said"  
do the same

This refers back to giving to someone what he needs.

Alternate translation: "give food to someone who does not have any" or "share extra food just as you shared the extra tunic"

Luke 3:12

to be baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for John to baptize them"

Luke 3:13

Do not collect more money

"Do not ask for more money" or "Do not demand more money." Tax collectors had been collecting more money than they should have been collecting. John tells them to stop doing that.

than you have been ordered to collect

This is passive to show that the tax collector's authority comes from Rome. Alternate translation: "than what the Romans have authorized you to take"

Luke 3:14

What about us? What must we do?

"How about us soldiers, what must we do?" John is not included in the words "us" and "we." The soldiers have implied that John had told the crowd and the tax collector what they must do and want to know what they as soldiers are to do.

do not accuse anyone falsely

It seems that the soldiers were making false charges against people in order to get money. This can be stated clearly.

Alternate translation: "in the same way, do not accuse anyone falsely in order to get money from them" or "do not say that an innocent person has done something illegal"

Be content with your wages

"Be satisfied with your pay"

Luke 3:15

as the people

"because the people." This refers to the same people who came to John.

everyone was wondering in their hearts concerning John, whether he might be the Christ.

"everyone was unsure what to think about John; they asked themselves, 'Could he be the Christ?'" or "no one was sure what to think about John because they were wondering whether he might be the Christ."

Luke 3:16

John answered by saying to them all

John's answer about a greater person coming clearly implies that John is not the Christ. It may be helpful to state this clearly for your audience. Alternate translation: "John clarified that he was not the Christ by saying to them all"

I baptize you with water

"I baptize using water" or "I baptize by means of water"

not worthy even to untie the strap of his sandals

"not important enough even to loosen the straps of his sandals." Untying the straps of sandals was a duty of a slave. John was saying that the one who would come is so

great that John was not even worthy enough to be his slave.

He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire

This metaphor compares literal baptism that brings a person into contact with water to a spiritual baptism that brings them into contact with the Holy Spirit and with fire.

Here the word "fire" may refer to 1) judgment or 2) purification. It is preferred to leave it as "fire"

Luke 3:17

His winnowing fork is in his hand

"He is holding a winnowing fork because he is ready." John speaks of the Christ coming to judge people as if he were a farmer who is ready to separate wheat grain from chaff.

Alternate translation: "He is ready to judge people like a farmer who is ready"

winnowing fork

This is a tool for tossing wheat into the air to separate the wheat grain from the chaff. The heavier grain falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind.

It is similar to a pitchfork.

to thoroughly clear off his threshing floor

The threshing floor was the place where wheat was stacked in preparation for threshing. To "clear off" the floor is to finish threshing the grain. Alternate translation: "to finish threshing his grain"

to gather the wheat

The wheat is the acceptable harvest that is kept and stored. will burn up the chaff

The chaff is not useful for anything, so people burn it up.

Luke 3:18

With many other exhortations

"With many other strong urgings"

Luke 3:19

General Information:

Verses 19 and 20 tell what is going to happen to John but has not happened at this time.

Herod the tetrarch

Herod was a tetrarch, not a king. He had only limited rule over the region of Galilee.

When Herod the tetrarch had been reproved

It is implied that John reproved Herod. This can also be translated with an active form. Alternate translation:

"When Herod the tetrarch had been reproved by John" or "When John reproved Herod the tetrarch" )

for marrying his brother's wife Herodias

"because Herod married Herodias, his own brother's wife."

This was evil because Herod's brother was still alive. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "because he married his brother's wife, Herodias, while his brother was still alive"

Luke 3:20

he locked John up in prison

Because Herod was tetrarch, he probably locked John up by ordering his soldiers to lock John up. Alternate translation:

"he had his soldiers lock John up in prison" or "he told his soldiers to put John in prison"

Luke 3:21

General Information:

The previous verse says that Herod put John in prison. It

might be helpful to make it clear that the account starting in verse 21 happened before John was arrested. The UDB does this by starting verse 21 with "But before John was put in prison."

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins his ministry with his baptism.

Now it came about

This phrase marks the beginning of a new event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

when all the people were baptized

"while John baptized all the people." The phrase "all the people" refers to the people present with John.

Jesus also was baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"John baptized Jesus also"

the heavens opened

"the sky opened" or "the sky became open." This is more than a simple clearing of clouds, but it's not clear what it means. It possibly means that a hole appeared in the sky.

Luke 3:22

the Holy Spirit in bodily form came down on him like a dove

"in physical form the Holy Spirit came down like a dove onto Jesus"

a voice came from heaven

Here "a voice came from heaven" represents people on earth hearing God in heaven speaking. It can be made clear that God spoke to Jesus. Alternate translation: "a voice from heaven said" or "God spoke to Jesus from heaven, saying" my beloved Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

Luke 3:23

General Information:

Luke lists the ancestors of Jesus through the line of his supposed father, Joseph.

When

This word is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Jesus's age and ancestors.

thirty years of age

"30 years old"

He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph

"It was thought that he was the son of Joseph" or "People assumed that he was the son of Joseph"

Luke 3:24

the son of Matthat, the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph

This continues the list that begins with the words "He was the son ... of Joseph, the son of Heli" in verse 24. Consider how people normally list ancestors in your language. You should use the same wording throughout the whole list. Possible formats are 1) "He was the son ... of Joseph, the son of Heli, who was the son of Matthat, who was the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph" or 2) "He was the son ... of Joseph. Joseph was the son of Heli. Heli was the son of Matthat. Matthat was the son of Levi. Levi was the son of Melchi. Melchi was the son of Jannai. Jannai was the son of Joseph" or 3) "His father ... was Joseph. Joseph's father was Heli. Heli's father was Matthat. Matthat's father was Levi. Levi's father was

Melchi. Melchi's father was Jannai. Jannai's father was Joseph"

Luke 3:25

the son of Mattathias, the son of Amos ... Naggai

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:26

the son of Maath ... Joda

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:27

Joda was the son of Joanan, the son of Rhesa ... Neri

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that begins in [Luke 3:23]

the son of Salathiel

The name Salathiel may be a different spelling of the name Shealtiel (as some versions have it), but identification is difficult.

Luke 3:28

the son of Melchi ... Er

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:29

the son of Joshua, the son of Eliezer ... Levi

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:30

the son of Simeon, the son of Judah ... Eliakim

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:31

the son of Melea ... David

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:32

the son of Jesse ... the son of Nahshon

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:33

the son of Amminadab, the son of Admin ... Judah

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:34

the son of Jacob ... Nahor

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:35

the son of Serug ... Shelah

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:36

the son of Cainan, the son of Arphaxad ... Lamech

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:37

the son of Methuselah ... Cainan

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:38

the son of Enos ... Adam

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Adam, the son of God

"Adam, created by God" or "Adam, who was from God" or "Adam, the son, we could say, of God"

---

## Chapter 4

# Luke 4 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 4:10-11, 18-19, which is from the Old Testament.

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Jesus was tempted by the devil

While it is true that the devil sincerely believed that he could persuade Jesus to obey him, it is important not to imply that Jesus actually ever really wanted to obey him.

## Links:

[Luke 4:1 Notes](#)

---

Luke 4:1

Then Jesus

After John had baptized Jesus.

was led by the Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Spirit led him"

Luke 4:2

Connecting Statement:

Jesus fasts for 40 days, and the devil meets him to try to persuade him to sin.

for forty days he was tempted

Most versions say that the temptation was throughout the forty days. The UDB states "While he was there, the devil kept tempting him" to make this clear.

forty days

"40 days"

he was tempted by the devil

This can be stated in active form, and you can make explicit what it was the devil tempted him to do. Alternate translation: "the devil tried to persuade him to disobey God"

He ate nothing

The word "he" refers to Jesus.

Luke 4:3

If you are the Son of God

The devil challenges Jesus to prove that he is the Son of God.

this stone

The devil either holds a stone in his hand or points to a nearby stone.

Luke 4:4

Jesus answered him, "It is written ... alone."

Jesus's rejection of the devil's challenge is clearly implied in his answer. It may be helpful to state this clearly for your audience, as the UDB does. Alternate translation: "Jesus replied, 'No, I will not do that because it is written ... alone.'"

It is written

The quotation is from Moses's writings in the Old Testament. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses has written in the scriptures"

Man does not live on bread alone

The word "bread" refers to food in general. Food as compared to God, by itself, is not enough to sustain a person. Jesus quotes the scripture to say why he would not turn the stone into bread. Alternate translation: "People cannot live on just bread" or "It is not just food that makes a person live" or "God says there are more important things than food"

Luke 4:5

Then the devil led Jesus up ... world

"Then the devil led Jesus up to a very high place ... world." It is uncertain where the devil led Jesus and how he showed all the kingdoms of the world to him.

in an instant of time

"in an instant" or "instantly"

Luke 4:6

they have been given to me

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are that "them" refers to 1) the authority and splendor of the kingdoms or 2) the kingdoms. Alternate translation: "God has given them to me"

Luke 4:7

if you will bow down ... worship me

These two phrases are very similar. They can be combined. Alternate translation: "if you will bow down in worship to me"

it will be yours

"I will give you all these kingdoms, with their splendor"

Luke 4:8

It is written

Jesus refused to do what the devil asked. It may be helpful to state this clearly. Alternate translation: "No, I will not worship you, because it is written"

answered and said to him

"responded to him" or "replied to him"

It is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses has written in the scriptures"

You will worship the Lord your God

Jesus was quoting a command from the scriptures to say why he would not worship the devil.

You

This refers to the people in the Old Testament who received God's Law. You could use the singular form of 'you' because each person was to obey it, or you could use the plural form of 'you' because all of the people were to obey it.

him

The word "him" refers to the Lord God.

Luke 4:9

the very highest point

This was the corner of the temple roof. If someone fell from there, they would be seriously injured or die.

If you are the Son of God

The devil is challenging Jesus to prove that he is the Son of God.

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

throw yourself down

"jump down to the ground"

Luke 4:10

For it is written

The devil implies that his quote from the Psalms means Jesus will not be hurt if he is the Son of God. This can be stated clearly, as the UDB does. Alternate translation: "You will not be hurt, because it is written"

it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the writer has written"

He will give orders

"He" refers to God. The devil partially quoted from the Psalms in an effort to persuade Jesus to jump off the building.

Luke 4:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 4:12

It is said

Jesus tells the devil why he will not do what the devil told him to do. His refusal to do it can be stated clearly.

Alternate translation: "No, I will not do that, because it is said"

It is said

Jesus quotes from the writings of Moses in Deuteronomy.

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"Moses has said" or "Moses has said in the scriptures"

Do not put the Lord your God to the test

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus should not test God by jumping off the temple, or 2) the devil should not test Jesus to see if he is the Son of God. It is best to translate the verse as stated rather than to try to explain the meaning.

Luke 4:13

until another time

"until another occasion"

had finished tempting Jesus

This does not imply that the devil was successful in his temptation—Jesus resisted every attempt. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "had finished trying to persuade Jesus to sin"

Luke 4:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus returns to Galilee, teaches in the synagogue (4:15), and tells the people there that he is fulfilling scripture of Isaiah the prophet (4:17-21).

Then Jesus returned

This begins a new event in the story.

in the power of the Spirit

"and the Spirit was giving him power." God was with Jesus in a special way, enabling him to do things that humans usually could not.

news about him spread

"people spread the news about Jesus" or "people told other people about Jesus" or "knowledge about him was passed on from person to person." Those who heard Jesus told other people about him, and then those other people told even more people about him.

throughout the entire surrounding region

This refers to the areas or places around Galilee.

Luke 4:15

he was praised by all

"everyone said great things about him" or "all the people spoke about him in a good way"

Luke 4:16

where he had been raised

"where his parents had raised him" or "where he lived when he was a child" or "where he grew up"

as was his custom

"as he did each Sabbath." It was his usual practice to go to the synagogue on the Sabbath day.

Luke 4:17

The scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"Someone gave him the scroll of the prophet Isaiah"

scroll of the prophet Isaiah

This refers to the book of Isaiah written on a scroll. Isaiah had written the words many years before, and someone else had copied them onto a scroll.

the place where it was written

"the place in the scroll with these words." This sentence continues on into the next verse.

Luke 4:18

The Spirit of the Lord is upon me

"The Holy Spirit is with me in a special way." When someone says this, he is claiming to speak the words of God.

he anointed me

In the Old Testament, ceremonial oil was poured on a person when they were given power and authority to do a special task. Jesus uses this metaphor to refer to the Holy Spirit being on him to prepare him for this work. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit is upon me to empower me" or "the Holy Spirit gave me power and authority"

the poor

"the poor people"

proclaim freedom to the captives

"tell people who are being held captive that they can go free" or "set free the prisoners of war"

recovery of sight to the blind

"give sight to the blind" or "make the blind be able to see again"

set free those who are oppressed

"set free those who are treated harshly"

Luke 4:19

to proclaim the year of the Lord's favor

"tell everyone that the Lord is ready to bless his people" or  
"announce that this is the year that the Lord will show his kindness"

Luke 4:20

rolled up the scroll

A scroll was closed by rolling it like a tube to protect the writing inside it.

attendant

This refers to a synagogue worker who brought out and put away with proper care and reverence the scrolls containing the scriptures.

sat down

It was customary for teachers to be seated while teaching. were fixed on him

This idiom means "were focused on him" or "were looking intently at him"

Luke 4:21

this scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing

Jesus was saying that he was fulfilling that prophecy by his actions and speech at that very time. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am fulfilling what this scripture says right now as you are listening to me"

in your hearing

This idiom means "while you are listening to me"

Luke 4:22

amazed at the gracious words which were coming out of his mouth

"surprised about the gracious things that he was saying."

Here "gracious" may refer to 1) how well or how persuasively Jesus spoke, or 2) that Jesus spoke words about God's grace.

Is this not the son of Joseph?

People thought that Joseph was Jesus's father. Joseph was not a religious leader, so they were surprised that his son would preach what he did. Alternate translation: "This is just Joseph's son!" or "His father is only Joseph!"

Luke 4:23

Surely

"Certainly" or "There is no doubt that"

Doctor, heal yourself

If someone claims to be able to heal diseases that he himself has, there is no reason to believe he is really a doctor. People will speak this proverb to Jesus to say that they will only believe he is a prophet if they see him do what they have heard that he did in other places.

Whatever we heard ... do the same in your hometown

The people of Nazareth do not believe Jesus is a prophet because of his low status as Joseph's son. They will not believe unless they personally see him do miracles.

Luke 4:24

Truly I say to you

"It is certainly true." This is an emphatic statement about what follows.

no prophet is received in his own hometown

Jesus makes this general statement in order to rebuke the people. He means that they are refusing to believe the reports of his miracles in Capernaum. They think they

already know all about him.

own hometown

"hometown" or "native city" or "country where he grew up"

Luke 4:25

General Information:

Jesus reminds the people who are listening to him in the synagogue about Elijah and Elisha

But in truth I tell you

"I tell you truthfully." Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance, truth, and accuracy of the statement that follows.

widows

Widows are women whose husbands have died and who have not married again.

during the time of Elijah

The people to whom Jesus was speaking would have known that Elijah was one of God's prophets. If your readers would not know that, you can make this implicit information explicit as in the UDB. Alternate translation:

"when Elijah was prophesying in Israel"

when the sky was shut up

This is a metaphor. The sky is pictured as a ceiling that was closed, and so no rain would fall from it. Alternate translation: "when no rain fell down from the sky" or "when there was no rain at all"

a great famine

"a serious lack of food." A famine occurs when the crops do not produce enough food for the people for a long period of time.

Luke 4:26

to Zarephath in Sidon, to a widow living there

The people living in the town of Zarephath were Gentiles, not Jews. The people listening to Jesus would have understood that the people of Zarephath were Gentiles.

Alternate translation: "to a Gentile widow living in Zarephath in Sidon"

Luke 4:27

none of them were cleansed except Naaman the Syrian

This double negative emphasizes that Naaman was the only one who was cleansed. This can also be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "the only one of them who was cleansed was Naaman" or "the only one of them whom God cleansed was Naaman"

were cleansed

People who had leprosy were considered to be unclean.

When they were healed from leprosy, they were clean.

Alternate translation: "were healed"

Naaman the Syrian

A Syrian is a person from the country of Syria. The people of Syria were Gentiles, not Jews. Alternate translation: "the Gentile Naaman from Syria"

Luke 4:28

All the people in the synagogue were filled with rage when they heard these things

The people of Nazareth were deeply offended that Jesus had cited scriptures where God had helped Gentiles instead of Jews.

Luke 4:29

forced him out of the town

"forced him to leave the town" or "shoved him out of the city"  
 cliff of the hill  
 "edge of the cliff"  
 Luke 4:30  
 through the middle of them  
 "through the middle of the crowd" or "between the people who were trying to kill him."  
 he went to another place  
 "he went away" or "he went on his way" Jesus went where he had planned to go instead of where the people were trying to force him to go.  
 Luke 4:31  
 Connecting Statement:  
 Jesus then goes to Capernaum, teaches the people in the synagogue there, and commands a demon to leave a man (4:35).  
 Then he  
 "Then Jesus." This indicates a new event.  
 went down to Capernaum  
 The phrase "went down" is used here because Capernaum is lower in elevation than Nazareth.  
 Capernaum, a city in Galilee  
 "Capernaum, another city in Galilee"  
 Luke 4:32  
 astonished  
 greatly surprised, greatly amazed  
 he spoke with authority  
 "he spoke as one with authority" or "his words had great power"  
 Luke 4:33  
 Now ... there was a man  
 This phrase is used to mark the introduction of a new character into the story; in this case, a demon-possessed man.  
 who had the spirit of an unclean demon  
 "who was possessed by an unclean demon" or "who was controlled by an evil spirit"  
 he cried out with a loud voice  
 "he shouted loudly"  
 Luke 4:34  
 What do we have to do with you  
 This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "What do we have in common" or "What right do you have to bother us"  
 What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?  
 This question could be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "What do you, Jesus of Nazareth, have to do with us!" or "We have nothing to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth!" or "You have no right to bother us, Jesus of Nazareth!"  
 Luke 4:35  
 Jesus rebuked the demon, saying  
 "Jesus scolded the demon, saying" or "Jesus sternly said to the demon"  
 Come out of him  
 He commanded the demon to stop controlling the man.  
 Alternate translation: "Leave him alone" or "Do not live in this man any longer"  
 Luke 4:36

What kind of words are these?  
 The people were expressing how amazed they were that Jesus had the authority to command demons to leave a person. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "These are amazing words!" or "His words are amazing!"  
 He commands the unclean spirits with authority and power  
 "He has authority and power to command the unclean spirits"  
 Luke 4:37  
 So news about him began to spread ... the surrounding region  
 This is a comment about what happened after the story.  
 The spread of the news was caused by the events within the story itself.  
 news about him began to spread  
 "reports about Jesus began to spread" or "people began to spread the news about Jesus"  
 Luke 4:38  
 Connecting Statement:  
 Jesus is still in Capernaum, but he is now at the house of Simon.  
 Then Jesus left  
 This introduces a new event.  
 Simon's mother-in-law  
 "the mother of Simon's wife"  
 was suffering with  
 This is an idiom that means "was very sick with"  
 a high fever  
 "very hot skin"  
 pleaded with him on her behalf  
 This means they asked Jesus to heal her from the fever. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "asked Jesus to heal her from the fever" or "asked Jesus to cure her fever"  
 Luke 4:39  
 So he stood  
 The word "So" makes it clear that he did this because the people pleaded with him on behalf of Simon's mother-in-law.  
 stood over her  
 "went to her and leaned over her"  
 rebuked the fever, and it left her  
 "spoke sternly to the fever, and it left her" or "commanded the fever to leave her, and it did." It may be helpful to state clearly what he told the fever to do. Alternate translation: "commanded that her skin should become cool, and it did" or "commanded the sickness to leave her, and it did"  
 rebuked the fever  
 "rebuked the hotness"  
 started serving them  
 Here this means she began to prepare food for Jesus and the other people in the house.  
 Luke 4:40  
 laid his hands on  
 "placed his hands on" or "touched"  
 Luke 4:41  
 Demons also came out  
 It is implied that Jesus made the demons leave the demon-possessed people. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Jesus also forced demons to come out"

crying out and saying  
These mean about the same thing, and probably refer to cries of fear or anger. Some translations use only one term.  
Alternate translation: "screaming" or "shouting"  
Son of God  
This is an important title for Jesus.  
rebuked the demons  
"spoke sternly to the demons"  
would not let them  
"did not allow them to"  
Luke 4:42  
Connecting Statement:  
Though the people want Jesus to stay in Capernaum, he goes to preach in other Judean synagogues.  
When daybreak came

"At sunrise" or "At dawn"  
a solitary place  
"a deserted place" or "a place where there were no people"  
Luke 4:43  
to many other cities  
"to the people in many other cities"  
this is the reason I was sent here  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
"this is the reason God sent me here"  
Luke 4:44  
throughout Judea  
Since Jesus had been in Galilee, the term "Judea" here probably refers to the entire region where the Jews lived at that time. Alternate translation: "where the Jews lived"

---

## Chapter 5

# Luke 5 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

"You will catch men"

Peter, James, and John were fishermen. When Jesus told them that they would catch men, he was using a metaphor to tell them he wanted them to help people believe the good news about him.

## Sinners

When the people of Jesus's time spoke of "sinners," they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call "sinners," he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as "sinners." (See: sin)

## Fasting and Feasting

People would fast, or not eat food for a long time, when they were sad or were showing God that they were sorry for their sins. When they were happy, like during weddings, they would have feasts, or meals where they would eat much food. (See: fast)

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Irony

Jesus uses irony to condemn the Pharisees. This passage includes "people in good health" and "righteous people." This does not mean that there are people who do not need Jesus. There are no "righteous people." Everybody needs Jesus. (See: and [Luke 5:31-32](#))

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Implicit information

In several parts of this chapter the author left out some implicit information that his original readers would have understood and thought about. Modern readers might not know some of those things, so they might have trouble understanding all that the author was communicating. The UDB often shows how that information can be presented so that modern readers will be able to understand those passages.

### Past Events

Parts of this chapter are sequences of events that have already happened. In a given passage, Luke sometimes writes as if the events have already happened while other events are still in progress (even though they are complete at the time he writes). This can cause difficulty in translation by creating an illogical order of events. It may be necessary to make these consistent by writing as if all the events have already happened.

### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

## Links:

[Luke 5:1 Notes](#)

---

## Luke 5:1

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus preaches from Simon Peter's boat at the lake of Gennesaret.

### Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.



listening to the word of God

Possible meanings are 1) "listening to the message God wanted them to hear" or 2) "listening to Jesus's message about God"

the lake of Gennesaret

These words refer to the Sea of Galilee. Galilee was on the west side of the lake, and the land of Gennesaret was on the east side, so it was called by both names. Some English versions translate this as the proper name of the body of water, "the Lake of Gennesaret."

Luke 5:2

washing their nets

They were cleaning their fishing nets in order to use them again to catch fish.

Luke 5:3

one of the boats, which was Simon's, and

"the boat belonging to Simon and"

asked him to put it out in the water

"asked Simon to move the boat"

he sat down and taught the people

Sitting was the normal position for a teacher.

taught the people out of the boat

"taught the people while he sat in the boat." Jesus was in the boat a short distance from the shore and he was speaking to the people who were on the shore.

Luke 5:4

When he had finished speaking

"When Jesus had finished teaching the people"

Luke 5:5

at your word

"because you have told me to do this"

Luke 5:6

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 5:7

motioned

They were too far from shore to call, so they made gestures, probably by waving their arms.

they began to sink

"the boats began to sink." The reason could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the boats began to sink because the catch of fish was so heavy" or "the boats began to sink because there were so many fish"

Luke 5:8

fell down at Jesus' knees

Possible meanings are 1) "knelt down before Jesus" or 2) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 3) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Peter did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

sinful man

The word here for "man" means "adult male" and not the more general "human being."

Luke 5:9

the catch of fish

"the large number of fish"

Luke 5:10

partners with Simon

"Simon's partners in his fishing business"

you will catch men

The image of catching fish is being used as a metaphor for gathering people to follow Christ. Alternate translation: "you will fish for people" or "you will gather people for me" or "you will bring people to be my disciples"

Luke 5:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 5:12

Connecting Statement:

Jesus heals a leper in a different city that is not named.

It came about

This phrase marks a new event in the story.

a man full of leprosy

"a man who was covered with leprosy." This introduces a new character in the story.

he fell on his face

Here "fell on his face" is an idiom that means to bow down.

Alternate translation: "he knelt and touched the ground with his face" or "he bowed down to the ground"

if you are willing

"if you want to"

you can make me clean

It is understood that he was asking Jesus to heal him. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "please make me clean, because you are able"

make me clean

This refers to ceremonial cleanness, but it is understood that he is unclean because of the leprosy. He is really asking Jesus to heal him of his disease. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "heal me from leprosy so I will be clean"

Luke 5:13

Be clean

This refers to ceremonial cleanness, but it is understood that he is unclean because of the leprosy. He is really asking Jesus to heal him of his disease. This can be stated clearly.

Alternate translation: "Be healed"

the leprosy left him

"he no longer had leprosy"

Luke 5:14

He instructed him to tell no one but told him, "Go on your way"

Jesus's instruction can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "He said, 'Do not tell anyone, but go on your way'"

to tell no one

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to not tell anyone that he had been healed"

sacrifice for your cleansing

The law required a person to make a specific sacrifice after they were healed. This allowed the person to be ceremonially clean, and able to again participate in religious rituals.

for a testimony

"as proof of your healing"

to them

Possible meanings are 1) "to the priests" or 2) "to all the people."

Luke 5:15

the report about him

"the news about Jesus." This could mean either "the report about Jesus's healing the man with leprosy" or "the report about Jesus's healing people."

the report about him spread even farther

"the report about him went out even farther." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people kept telling the news about him in other places"

Luke 5:16

the deserted places

"lonely places" or "places where there were no other people"

Luke 5:17

Connecting Statement:

One day when Jesus was teaching in a building, some men brought a paralyzed man for Jesus to heal.

It came about

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story.

Luke 5:18

Now some men came

These are new people in the story. Your language may have a way of showing that these are new people.

mat

sleeping pad or bed or stretcher

was paralyzed

"could not move himself"

Luke 5:19

They could not find a way to bring him in because of the crowd, so

In some languages it might be more natural to reorder this.

Alternate translation: "But because of the crowd of people, they could not find a way to bring the man inside. So"

because of the crowd

It is clear that the reason they could not enter was that the crowd was so large that there was no room for them.

they went up to the housetop

Houses had flat roofs, and some houses had a ladder or staircase outside to make it easy to go up there. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "they went up to the flat roof of the house"

right in front of Jesus

"directly in front of Jesus" or "immediately in front of Jesus"

Luke 5:20

Seeing their faith, Jesus said

It is understood that they believe Jesus can heal the

paralyzed man. This can be stated. Alternate translation:

"When Jesus perceived that they believed that he could heal the man, he said to him"

Man

This is a general word that people used when speaking to a man whose name they did not know. It was not rude, but it also did not show special respect. Some languages might use a word like "friend" or "sir."

your sins are forgiven you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"you are forgiven" or "I forgive your sins"

Luke 5:21

question this

"discuss this" or "reason about this." What they questioned can be stated. Alternate translation: "discuss whether or not Jesus had authority to forgive sins"

Who is this who speaks blasphemies?

This question shows how shocked and angry they were at what Jesus said. This can be written as a statement.

Alternate translation: "This man is blaspheming God!" or "He blasphemes God by saying that!"

Who can forgive sins but God alone?

The implied information is that if a person claims to forgive sins he says he is God. This can be written as a clear statement. Alternate translation: "No one can forgive sins but God alone!" or "God is the only one who can forgive sins!"

Luke 5:22

Why are you questioning this in your hearts?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation:

"You should not argue about this in your hearts." or "You should not doubt that I have the authority to forgive sins." in your hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds or inner beings.

Luke 5:23

Which is easier: to say, 'Your sins are forgiven you' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "You may think that it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'"

easier to say

The unspoken implication is that one thing is easier to say because no one will know what has happened, but the other thing is harder to say because everyone will know what has happened. People could not see if the man's sins were forgiven, but they would all know he was healed if he got up and walked.

Luke 5:24

you may know

Jesus was speaking to the scribes and Pharisees. The word "you" is plural.

the Son of Man

Jesus was referring to himself.

I tell you

Jesus was saying this to the paralyzed man. The word "you" is singular.

Luke 5:25

Immediately he got up

"At once he got up" or "Right away he got up"

he got up

It may be helpful to clearly say that he was healed.

Alternate translation: "the man was healed! He got up"

Luke 5:26

filled with fear

"very afraid" or "filled with awe"

extraordinary things

"amazing things" or "strange things"

Luke 5:27

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus leaves the house, he calls Levi, the Jewish tax collector, to follow him.

After these things happened

The phrase "these things" refers to what happened in the previous verses. This signals a new event.

saw a tax collector

"looked at a tax collector with attention" or "looked carefully at a tax collector"

Follow me

To "follow" someone is to become that person's disciple.

Alternate translation: "Be my disciple" or "Come, follow me as your teacher"

Luke 5:28

followed him, leaving everything behind

"followed him and left his work as a tax collector"

Luke 5:29

in his house

"in Levi's house"

reclining at the table

It was customary to lie on a couch while eating at a feast and to prop oneself up with the left arm on some pillows.

Alternate translation: "eating together" or "eating at the table"

Luke 5:30

to his disciples

"to Jesus's disciples"

Why do you eat ... sinners?

The Pharisees and scribes ask this question to express their disapproval that Jesus's disciples are eating with sinners.

Alternate translation: "You should not eat ... sinners!"  
sinners

people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

you eat and drink with ... sinners

The Pharisees and scribes believed that religious people should separate themselves from people they consider to be sinners. The word "you" is plural.

Luke 5:31

Connecting Statement:

At the meal, Jesus speaks with the Pharisees and scribes.

People who are well ... sick

Jesus uses this proverb to begin to tell them that he calls sinners to repentance the way a physician calls sick people to be healed.

physician

"doctor"

only those who are sick

You may need to supply the words that have been omitted.

Alternate translation: "only those who are sick need a physician"

Luke 5:32

I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance

Jesus uses irony to condemn the Pharisees because they think of themselves as righteous. Anyone who wants to follow Jesus has to think of himself as a sinner, not as righteous. Jesus does not mean that he thinks there are righteous people who do not need to repent.

the righteous

This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase.

Alternate translation: "righteous people"

Luke 5:33

They said to him

"The religious leaders said to Jesus"

Luke 5:34

Can anyone make the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast while the bridegroom is still with them?

Jesus uses this question to cause the people to think about a situation that they already know. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one tells the wedding attendants of the bridegroom to fast while he is still with them."

wedding attendants

"guests" or "friends." These are friends who celebrate with a man who is getting married.

the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast

Fasting is a sign of sadness. The religious leaders understood that the wedding attendants would not fast while the bridegroom was with them.

Luke 5:35

the days will come when

"soon" or "some day"

the bridegroom will be taken away from them

Jesus is comparing himself to the bridegroom, and the disciples to the wedding attendants. He does not explain the metaphor, so the translation should explain it only if necessary.

Luke 5:36

General Information:

Jesus tells a story to the scribes and pharisees who were at Levi's house.

No one tears ... uses it ... he ... he

"No one rips ... uses it ... he ... he" or "People never tear ... use it ... they ... they"

mend

repair

will not fit with

"will not match" or "will not be the same as"

Luke 5:37

new wine

"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not yet fermented.

wineskins

These were bags made out of animal skins. They could also be called "wine bags" or "bags made of skin."

the new wine will burst the skins

When the new wine would ferment and expand, it would break the old skins because they could no longer stretch out. Jesus's audience would have understood how wine expands when it ferments.

the wine will be spilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the wine will spill out of the bags"

Luke 5:38

fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to new wineskins, unused.

Luke 5:39

drinking old wine ... wants the new

This metaphor contrasts the old teaching of the religious leaders against the new teaching of Jesus. The point is that people who are used to the old teaching are not willing to

listen to the new things that Jesus is teaching.  
for he says, 'The old is better.'  
It may be helpful to add the implicit information. Alternate

translation: "for he says, 'The old is better,' and he is  
therefore not willing to try the new wine."

---

## Chapter 6

# Luke 6 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Luke 6:20-49 contains many blessings and woes that appear to correspond to Matthew 5-7. This part of Matthew has traditionally been called the "Sermon on the Mount." In Luke, they are not as connected to a teaching on the kingdom of God as they are in Matthew's gospel. (See: [kingdomofgod](#))

## Special concepts in this chapter

### "Eating the grain"

When the disciples plucked and ate the grain in a field they were walking through on the Sabbath ([Luke 6:1](#)), the Pharisees said that they were breaking the law of Moses. The Pharisees said that the disciples were doing work by picking the grain and so disobeying God's command to rest and not work on the Sabbath.

The Pharisees did not think the disciples were stealing. That is because the law of Moses required farmers to allow travelers to pluck and eat small amounts of grain from plants in fields they traveled through or near. (See: [lawofmoses](#) and [works and sabbath](#))

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Metaphor

Metaphors are pictures of visible objects that speakers use to explain invisible truths. Jesus used a metaphor of a generous grain merchant to teach his people to be generous

### Rhetorical Questions

Rhetorical questions are questions to which the speaker already knows the answer. The Pharisees scolded Jesus by asking him a rhetorical question when they thought he was breaking the Sabbath

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Implicit information

Speakers usually do not say things that they think their hearers already understand. When Luke wrote that the disciples were rubbing the heads of grain between their hands, he expected his reader to know that they were separating the part they would eat from what they would throw away

### The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

#### In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

#### In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

#### In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

## Links:

[Luke 6:1 Notes](#)

---

### Luke 6:1

#### Connecting Statement:

While Jesus and his disciples are walking through grainfields, some Pharisees begin to question the disciples about what they are doing on the Sabbath, which, in God's law, has been set aside for God.

#### Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you can consider using it here.

#### grainfields

These are large sections of land where people had scattered wheat seed to grow wheat.

#### heads of grain

These are the topmost parts of the grain plant, which is a kind of large grass. It holds the mature, edible seeds of the plant.

#### grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating

They did this to separate the grain seeds. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "grain. They rubbed them in

their hands to separate the grains from the husks and ate"

Luke 6:2

General Information:

The word "you" here is plural, and refers to the disciples.

Why are you doing something that is not lawful to do on the Sabbath day?

They asked this question to accuse the disciples of breaking the law. It can be written as a statement. Alternate

translation: "Picking grain on the Sabbath is against God's law!"

doing something

The Pharisees considered even the small action of rubbing a handful of grain to be unlawful work. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "doing work"

Luke 6:3

Have you not even read ... him?

Jesus is rebuking the Pharisees for not learning from the scriptures. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should learn from what you have read ... him!" or "Certainly you have read ... him!"

Luke 6:4

the bread of the presence

This is the sacred bread that priests placed before God in the tabernacle. It represented God's presence. Alternate translation: "the bread of Yahweh's presence" or "the bread that the priest placed before God" or "the sacred bread"

Luke 6:5

The Son of Man is

Jesus was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am"

is Lord of the Sabbath

The title "Lord" here emphasizes his authority over the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "has the authority to determine what is right for people to do on the Sabbath!"

Luke 6:6

General Information:

It is now another Sabbath day and Jesus is in the synagogue.

Connecting Statement:

The scribes and Pharisees watch as Jesus heals a man on the Sabbath.

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event in the story.

A man was there

This introduces a new character in the story.

hand was withered

The man's hand was damaged in such a way that he could not stretch it. It was probably almost bent into a fist, making it look small and wrinkled.

Luke 6:7

were watching him closely

"were watching Jesus carefully"

so that they might find

"because they wanted to find"

Luke 6:8

in the middle of everyone

"in front of everyone." Jesus wanted the man to stand where everyone there could see him.

Luke 6:9

to them

"to the Pharisees"

I ask you, is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do harm, to save a life or to destroy it?

Jesus asks this question to force the Pharisees to admit that he was right to heal on the Sabbath. The intent of the question is thus rhetorical: to get them to admit what they all know is true rather than to obtain information.

However, Jesus says, "I ask you," so this question is not like other rhetorical questions that might need to be translated as statements. This should be translated as a question.

to do good or to do harm

"to help someone or to harm someone"

Luke 6:10

Stretch out your hand

"Hold out your hand" or "Extend your hand"

restored

healed

Luke 6:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 6:12

General Information:

Jesus chooses twelve apostles after he prays all night.

It happened in those days

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

in those days

"around that time" or "not long after" or "one day around then"

he went out

"Jesus went out"

Luke 6:13

When it was day

"When it was morning" or "The next day"

he chose twelve of them

"he chose twelve of the disciples"

whom he also named apostles

"whom he also made apostles" or "and he appointed them to be apostles"

Luke 6:14

The names of the apostles were

Luke wrote a list of the names of the apostles. The ULB uses these words to introduce the list.

his brother Andrew

"Simon's brother, Andrew"

Luke 6:15

the Zealot

Possible meanings are 1) "the Zealot" is a title that indicates he was part of the group of people who wanted to free the Jewish people from Roman rule. Alternate translation: "the patriot" or "the nationalist" or 2) "the Zealot" is a description that indicates he was zealous for God to be honored. Alternate translation: "the passionate one"

Luke 6:16

became a traitor

It may be necessary to explain what "traitor" means in this context. Alternate translation: "betrayed his friend" or

"turned his friend over to enemies"

Luke 6:17

Connecting Statement:

Though Jesus especially addresses his disciples, there are many people around who listen.

with them

"with the twelve he had chosen" or "with his twelve apostles"

Luke 6:18

to be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for Jesus to heal them"

People who were troubled with unclean spirits were also healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"Jesus also healed people who were troubled with unclean spirits"

troubled with unclean spirits

"bothered by unclean spirits" or "controlled by evil spirits"

Luke 6:19

power to heal was coming out from him

"he had power to heal people" or "he was using his power to heal people"

Luke 6:20

Blessed are you

Jesus speaks this phrase three times. Each time, it indicates that God gives favor to certain people or that their situation is positive or good.

Blessed are you who are poor

"You who are poor receive God's favor" or "You who are poor benefit"

for yours is the kingdom of God

Languages that do not have a word for kingdom might say, "for God is your king" or "because God is your ruler."

yours is the kingdom of God

"the kingdom of God belongs to you." This could mean 1)

"you belong to God's kingdom" or 2) "you will have

authority in God's kingdom."

Luke 6:21

you will laugh

"you will laugh with joy" or "you will be joyful"

Luke 6:22

Blessed are you

"You receive God's favor" or "You benefit" or "How good it is for you"

exclude you

"reject you"

because of the Son of Man

"because you associate with the Son of Man" or "because they reject the Son of Man"

Luke 6:23

in that day

"when they do those things" or "when that happens"

leap for joy

This idiom means "be extremely joyful"

a great reward

"a large payment" or "good gifts"

Luke 6:24

woe to you

"how terrible it is for you." Jesus speaks this phrase three

times. It is the opposite of "blessed are you." Each time, it indicates that God's anger is directed at the people, or that something negative or bad awaits them.

woe to you who are rich

"how terrible it is for you who are rich" or "trouble will come to you who are rich"

your comfort

"what comforts you" or "what satisfies you" or "what makes you happy"

Luke 6:25

who are full now

"whose stomachs are full now" or "who eat much now"

who laugh now

"who are happy now"

Luke 6:26

Woe to you

"How terrible it is for you" or "How sad you should be"

when all men speak

Here "men" is used in the generic sense the includes all people. Alternate translation: "when all people speak" or

"when everyone speaks"

that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets

"their ancestors also spoke well of the false prophets"

Luke 6:27

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak to his disciples and the crowd who is listening to him as well.

to you who are listening

Jesus now begins to speak to the entire crowd, rather than just to his disciples.

love ... do good

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

love your enemies and

This does not mean those listening were to only love their enemies and not their friends. This can be stated clearly.

Alternate translation: "love your enemies, not only your friends, and"

Luke 6:28

Bless ... pray

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

Bless those

God is the one who blesses. This can be made explicit.

Alternate translation: "Ask God to bless those"

those who curse you

"those who habitually curse you"

those who mistreat you

"those who habitually mistreat you"

Luke 6:29

To him who strikes you

"If anyone hits you"

on the one cheek

"on one side of your face"

offer him also the other

It may be helpful to state what the attacker will do to the person. Alternate translation: "turn your face so that he can strike the other cheek also"

do not withhold

"do not prevent him from taking"

Luke 6:30

Give to everyone who asks you

"If anyone asks you for something, give it to him"

do not ask him to give

"do not require him to give" or "do not demand that he give"

Luke 6:31

As you want people to do to you, you should do the same to them

In some languages it may be more natural to reverse the order. Alternate translation: "You should do to people the same as what you want them to do to you" or "Treat people the way you want them to treat you"

Luke 6:32

what reward is there for you?

"what reward will you receive?" or "what praise will you receive for doing that?" This can be written as a statement.

Alternate translation: "you will not receive any reward for that." or "God will not reward you for that."

Luke 6:33

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 6:34

people from whom you hope to be repaid

Here the word "hope" means to confidently expect that what one desires will happen. The person who hopes in this way believes that what he desires will happen. The verb "to be repaid" can be expressed with an active form. Alternate translation: "people whom you expect will repay you" or "people whom you believe will repay you"

to receive back the same amount

The law of Moses commanded the Jews not to receive interest on money they loaned to other Jews.

Luke 6:35

expecting nothing in return

"not expecting the person to return what you have given him" or "not expecting the person to give you anything"

your reward will be great

"you will receive a great reward" or "you will receive good payment" or "you will get good gifts because of it"

you will be sons of the Most High

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human son or child.

sons of the Most High

Make sure that the word "sons" is plural so it is not confused with Jesus's title "The Son of the Most High."

unthankful and evil people

"people who do not thank him and who are evil"

Luke 6:36

your Father

This refers to God. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human father.

Luke 6:37

Do not judge

"Do not judge people" or "Do not harshly criticize people" and you

"and as a result you"

you will not be judged

Jesus does not say who will not judge. Possible meanings are 1) "God will not judge you" or 2) "no one will judge you"

Do not condemn

"Do not condemn people"

you will not be condemned

Jesus does not say who will not condemn. Possible meanings are 1) "God will not condemn you" or 2) "no one will condemn you"

you will be forgiven

Jesus does not say who will forgive. Possible meanings are 1) "God will forgive you" or 2) "people will forgive you"

Luke 6:38

it will be given to you

Jesus does not say exactly who will give. Possible meanings are 1) "someone will give it to you" or 2) "God will give it to you"

A good amount—pressed down, shaken together and spilling over—will pour into your lap

Jesus speaks either of God or of people giving generously as if he were speaking of a generous grain merchant.

Alternate translation: "God will pour into your lap a generous amount—pressed down, shaken together and spilling over" or "Like a generous grain merchant who presses down the grain and shakes it together and pours in so much grain that it spills over, they will give generously to you"

A good amount

"A generous amount" or "A large amount"

it will be measured back to you

Jesus does not say exactly who will measure. Possible meanings are 1) "they will measure things back to you" or 2) "God will measure things back to you"

Luke 6:39

Connecting Statement:

Jesus includes some examples to make his point.

Can a blind person guide another blind person?

Jesus used this question to get the people to think about something that they already know. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We all know that a blind person cannot guide another blind person."

blind person

The person who is "blind" is a metaphor for a person who has not been taught as a disciple.

If he did

Some languages might prefer, "if one did."

they would both fall into a pit, would they not?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "both of them would fall into a hole."

Luke 6:40

A disciple is not greater than his teacher

"A disciple does not surpass his teacher." Possible meanings are 1) "A disciple does not have more knowledge than his teacher" or 2) "A disciple does not have more authority than his teacher."

everyone when he is fully trained

"every disciple who has been trained well" or "every disciple whose teacher has fully taught him"

Luke 6:41

Why do you look ... brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye?

Jesus uses this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "Do not look ... brothers eye while you ignore the log that is in your own eye."

the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye

This is a metaphor that refers to the less important faults of a fellow believer.

tiny piece of straw

"speck" or "splinter" or "bit of dust." Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

brother

Here "brother" refers to a fellow Jew or a fellow believer in Jesus.

do not notice the log that is in your own eye

"do not notice that you have a log in your own eye"

the log that is in your own eye

This is a metaphor for a person's most important faults. A log could not literally go into a person's eye. Jesus exaggerates to emphasize that a person should pay attention to his own more important faults before he deals with another person's less important faults.

log

"beam" or "plank"

Luke 6:42

How can you say ... eye?

Jesus asks this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "You should not say ... eye."

Luke 6:43

General Information:

People can tell if a tree is good or bad, and what type of tree it is, by the fruit it produces. Jesus uses this as an unexplained metaphor—we know what kind of person someone is when we see his actions.

For there is

"This is because there is." This indicates that what follows is the reason why we should not judge our brother.

good tree

"healthy tree"

rotten fruit

fruit that is decaying or bad or worthless

Luke 6:44

each tree is known

People recognize the kind of tree by the fruit it bears. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people know the type of a tree" or "people recognize a tree"

thornbush

a plant or shrub that has thorns

briar bush

a vine or shrub that has thorns

Luke 6:45

General Information:

Jesus compares the thoughts of a person to his good or evil treasure. When a good person has good thoughts, he engages in good actions. When an evil person thinks evil

thoughts, he engages in evil actions.

The good man

The word "good" here means righteous or moral.

good man

The word "man" here refers to a person, male or female.

Alternate translation: "good person"

the good treasure of his heart

Here the good thoughts of a person are spoken of as if they were treasures stored in the heart of that person, and "his heart" is a metonym for the person's inner being. Alternate translation: "the good things he keeps deep inside himself" or "the good things he values very intensely"

produces what is good

Producing what is good is a metaphor for doing what is good. Alternate translation: "does what is good"

the evil treasure of his heart

Here the evil thoughts of a person are spoken of as if they were evil things stored in the heart of that person, and "his heart" is a metonym the person's inner being. Alternate translation: "the evil things he keeps deep inside himself" or "the evil things he values very intensely"

out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks

Here "heart" represents the person's mind or inner being.

The phrase "his mouth" represents the person as a whole.

Alternate translation: "what he thinks in his heart affects what he says with his mouth" or "a person will speak aloud what truly values inside of himself"

Luke 6:46

Lord, Lord

Here the repetition of these words is used as an exclamation. People repeat a name or title in this way when trying to find someone or to get someone's attention.

Luke 6:47

General Information:

In verse 47-48 Jesus compares the person who obeys his teaching to a man who builds a house on rock where it will be safe from floods.

Every person who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them, I will tell you what he is like

It may be clearer to change the order of this sentence.

Alternate translation: "I will tell you what every person is like who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them"

Luke 6:48

dug down deep in the ground and built the house's foundation on solid rock

"dug down deep into the ground until he found a large, solid rock. Then he built his house on that rock so that it would be strong and stable." Some cultures may not be familiar with this process of building a house and may need to use another image for a stable foundation.

torrent of water

"fast-moving water" or "river"

flowed against

"crashed against"

shake it

Possible meanings are 1) "cause it to shake" or 2) "destroy it."

because it had been well built

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:



"because the man had built it well"

Luke 6:49

General Information:

Jesus compares the person who hears but does not obey his teaching to a man who builds a house that has no foundation and so will collapse when the flood comes.

But the person

"But" shows a strong contrast to the previous person who built with a foundation.

on top of the ground without a foundation

Some cultures may not know that a house with a

foundation is stronger. Additional information may be helpful. Alternate translation: "but he did not dig down and build first a foundation"

torrent of water

"fast-moving water" or "river"

flowed against

"crashed against"

collapsed

fell down or came apart

the ruin of that house was complete

"that house was completely destroyed"

---

Chapter 7

## Luke 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 7:27.

Several times in this chapter Luke changes his topic without marking the change. You should not try to make these rough changes smooth.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Centurion

The centurion who asked Jesus to heal his slave ([Luke 7:2](#)) was doing many unusual things. A Roman soldier would almost never go to a Jew for anything, and most wealthy people did not love or care for their slaves. (See: centurion and faith)

#### John's Baptism

John baptized people to show that those he was baptizing knew they were sinners and were sorry for their sin. (See: repent and sin)

#### "Sinners"

Luke refers to a group of people as "sinners." The Jewish leaders considered these people to be hopelessly ignorant of the law of Moses, and so called them "sinners." In reality, the leaders were sinful. This situation can be taken as irony.

#### "Feet"

The feet of the people in the ancient Near East were very dirty because they wore sandals and the roads and trails were dusty and muddy. Only slaves washed other people's feet. The woman who washed Jesus's feet was showing him great honor.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

### Links:

[Luke 7:1 Notes](#)

---

Luke 7:1

General Information:

Jesus enters Capernaum, where he heals a centurion's servant.

in the hearing of the people

The idiom "in the hearing" emphasizes that he wanted them to hear what he said. Alternate translation: "to the people who were listening to him" or "to the people who were present" or "for the people to hear"

he entered Capernaum

This begins a new event in the story.

Luke 7:2

who was highly regarded by him

"whom the centurion valued" or "whom he respected"

Luke 7:3

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 7:4

asked him earnestly

"pleaded with him" or "begged him"

He is worthy

"The centurion is worthy"

Luke 7:5

our nation

"our people." This refers to the Jewish people.

Luke 7:6

continued on his way

"went along"

not far from the house

"near the house"

do not trouble yourself

The centurion was speaking politely to Jesus. Alternate translation: "do not trouble yourself by coming to my house" or "I do not wish to bother you"

come under my roof

This phrase is an idiom that means "come into my house." If your language has an idiom that means "come into my house," think about whether it would be good to use here.  
Luke 7:7

just say a word

The servant understood that Jesus could heal the servant just by speaking. Here "word" refers to a command.

Alternate translation: "just give the order"

my servant will be healed

The word that is translated here as "servant" is normally translated as "boy." It may indicate that the servant was very young or show the centurion's affection for him.

Luke 7:8

I also am a man who is under authority

"I also have someone over me that I must obey"

under me

"under my authority"

to my servant

The word that is translated here as "servant" is the typical word for a servant.

Luke 7:9

he was amazed at him

"he was amazed at the centurion"

I say to you

Jesus said this to emphasize the surprising thing that he was about to tell them.

not even in Israel have I found such faith.

The implication is that Jesus expected Jewish people to have this kind of faith, but they did not. He did not expect Gentiles to have this kind of faith, yet this man did. You may need to add this implied information. Alternate translation: "I have not found any Israelite who trusts me as much as this Gentile does!"

Luke 7:10

those who had been sent

It is understood that these were the people the centurion sent. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "the people whom the Roman officer had sent to Jesus"

Luke 7:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus goes to the city of Nain, where he heals a man who had died.

Nain

This is the name of a city.

Luke 7:12

behold, a man who had died

The word "behold" alerts us to the introduction of the dead man into the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "there was a dead man who"

a man who had died was being carried out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"people were carrying out of the city a man who had died" carried out, the only son of his mother (who was a widow), and a rather large crowd

"carried out. He was his mother's only son, and she was a widow. A rather large crowd." This is background information about the dead man and his mother.

widow

a woman whose husband has died and who has not remarried

Luke 7:13

was deeply moved with compassion for her

"felt very sorry for her"

Luke 7:14

he went up

"he went forward" or "he approached the dead man"

the wooden frame on which they carried the body

This was a stretcher or bed used to move the body to the burial place. It did not have to be something in which the body was buried. Other translations may have the less common "bier" or "funeral couch."

I say to you, arise

Jesus says this to emphasize that the young man needs to obey him. "Listen to me! Arise"

Luke 7:15

The dead man

The man was not still dead; he was now alive. It may be necessary to state this clearly. Alternate translation: "The man who had been dead"

Luke 7:16

Connecting Statement:

This tells what happens as a result of Jesus healing the man who had died.

fear overcame all of them

"fear filled all of them." This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: "they all became very afraid"

A great prophet has been raised among us

They were referring to Jesus, not to some unidentified prophet. "Raised" here is an idiom for "caused to become."

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God has caused one of us to become a great prophet"

looked upon

This idiom means "cared for"

Luke 7:17

This news about Jesus spread

"This news" refers to the things people were saying in verse 16. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"People spread this report about Jesus" or "People told others this report about Jesus"

This news

"This report" or "This message"

Luke 7:18

John's disciples told him about all these things

This introduces a new event in the story.

told him

"told John"

all these things

"all the things Jesus was doing"

Luke 7:19

Connecting Statement:

John sends two of his disciples to question Jesus.

Luke 7:20

the men said, "John the Baptist has sent us to you to say, 'Are you ... or should we look for another?'"

This sentence can be rewritten so that it only has one direct quote. Alternate translation: "the men said that John the Baptist had sent them to him to ask, 'Are you the one who is

coming, or should we look for another?" or "the men said, 'John the Baptist has sent us to you to ask if you are the one who is coming, or if we should look for another.'"

Luke 7:21

In that hour

"At that time"

from evil spirits

It may be helpful to restate the healing. Alternate translation: "he healed them from evil spirits" or "he set people free from evil spirits"

Luke 7:22

said to them

"said to John's messengers" or "said to the messengers that John sent"

report to John

"tell John"

people who have died are being raised back to life

"dead people are being caused to live again"

the poor

This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase.

Alternate translation: "poor people"

Luke 7:23

The person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions is blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will bless the person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions"

The person who does not ... is blessed

"People who do not ... are blessed" or "Anyone who does not ... is blessed" or "Whoever does not ... is blessed." This is not a specific person.

does not stop believing in me because of

"continues to believe in me despite"

believing in me

"trusting me completely"

Luke 7:24

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to speak to the crowd about John the Baptist. He asks rhetorical questions to lead them to think about what John the Baptist is really like.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

This expects a negative answer. These questions can be written as a question with an answer or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Did you go out to see a reed shaken by the wind? Of course not!" or "Surely you did not go out to see a reed being shaken by the wind!"

A reed shaken by the wind

Possible meanings of this metaphor are 1) a person who easily changes his mind, as reeds are easily moved by the wind, or 2) a person who talks a lot but does not say anything important, as reeds rattle when the wind blows.

Luke 7:25

But what did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft clothes?

This expects a negative answer. These questions can be written as a question with an answer or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Did you go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes? Of course not!" or "You certainly did not go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes!"

dressed in soft clothes

This refers to expensive clothing. Normal clothing was rough. Alternate translation: "wearing expensive clothing" kings' palaces

A palace is a large, expensive house that a king lives in.

Luke 7:26

But what did you go out to see? A prophet?

This expects a positive answer. These questions can be written as a question with an answer or as a statement.

Alternate translation: "Did you go out to see a prophet? Of course you did!" or "But you actually went out to see a prophet!"

Yes, I say to you

Jesus says this to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

more than a prophet

This phrase means that John was indeed a prophet, but that he was even greater than a typical prophet. Alternate translation: "not just an ordinary prophet" or "much more important than a normal prophet"

Luke 7:27

This is he of whom it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"John is the one the prophets wrote about long ago"

See, I am sending

In this verse, Jesus is quoting the prophet Malachi and saying that John is the messenger of which Malachi spoke. before your face

This idiom means "in front of you" or "to go ahead of you" your

The word "your" is singular because God was speaking to the Messiah in the quotation.

Luke 7:28

I say to you

Jesus is speaking to the crowd, so "you" is plural. Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the truth of the surprising thing he is about to say next.

among those born of women

"among those to whom a woman has given birth." This is a metaphor that refers to all people. Alternate translation: "of all the people who have ever lived"

none is greater than John

"John is the greatest"

the one who is least in the kingdom of God

This refers to anyone who is part of the kingdom that God will establish.

is greater than he is

The spiritual state of people in the kingdom of God will be higher than that of the people before the kingdom was established. Alternate translation: "has higher spiritual status than John"

Luke 7:29

General Information:

Luke, the author of this book, comments on how people responds to John and Jesus.

When all the people heard this, including the tax collectors, they declared that God is righteous, because they had been baptized with the baptism of John

This verse could be reordered to be more clear. Alternate translation: "When all the people who had been baptized by

John, including the tax collectors, heard this, they declared that God is righteous"

they declared that God is righteous

"they said that God had shown himself to be righteous" or "they declared that God had acted righteously"

because they had been baptized with the baptism of John

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"because they had let John baptize them" or "because John had baptized them"

Luke 7:30

rejected God's purpose for themselves

"rejected what God wanted them to do" or "chose to disobey what God told them"

they had not been baptized by John

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"they did not let John baptize them" or "they rejected John's baptism"

Luke 7:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the people about John the Baptist.

To what, then, can I compare the people of this generation? What are they like?

Jesus uses these questions to introduce a comparison. They can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is what I compare this generation to. This is what they are like."

I compare ... What are they like

These are two ways of saying that this is a comparison.

the people of this generation

The people living when Jesus spoke.

Luke 7:32

They are like

These words are the beginning of Jesus's comparison. Jesus is saying that the people are like children who are never satisfied with the way other children act.

marketplace

a large, open-air area where people come to sell their goods

and you did not dance

"but you did not dance to the music"

and you did not cry

"but you did not cry with us"

Luke 7:33

eating no bread

Possible meanings are 1) "frequently fasting" or 2) "not eating normal food."

you say, 'He has a demon.'

Jesus was quoting what people were saying about John.

This can be stated without the direct quote. Alternate

translation: "you say that he has a demon." or "you accuse him of having a demon."

Luke 7:34

The Son of Man came

Jesus expected the people to understand that he was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, came"

you say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!'

This can be translated as an indirect quote. If you

translated "The Son of Man" as "I, the Son of man," you can state this as an indirect statement and use the first person.

Alternate translation: "you accuse him of eating and drinking too much and of being a friend of tax collectors and sinners." or "you say that I am a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors sinners."

he is a gluttonous man

"he is a greedy eater" or "he continually eats too much food"

a drunkard

"a drunk" or "he continually drinks too much alcohol"

Luke 7:35

wisdom is justified by all her children

This appears to be a proverb that Jesus applied to this situation, probably to teach that wise people would understand that the people should not have rejected Jesus and John.

Luke 7:36

General Information:

It was a custom in that time for onlookers to attend dinners without eating.

Connecting Statement:

A Pharisee invites Jesus to eat at his house.

Now one of the Pharisees

The marks the beginning of a new part of the story and introduces the Pharisee into the story.

reclined at the table to eat

"sat down at the table for the meal." It was the custom at a relaxed meal such as this dinner for men to eat while lying down comfortably around the table.

Luke 7:37

Behold, there was a woman

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story.

Your language may have a way of doing this.

who was a sinner

"who lived a sinful lifestyle" or "who had a reputation for living a sinful life." She may have been a prostitute.

an alabaster jar

"a jar made of soft stone." Alabaster is a soft, white rock.

People stored precious things in alabaster jars.

of perfumed oil

"with perfume in it." The oil had something in it that made it smell nice. People rubbed it on themselves or sprinkled their clothing with it in order to smell nice.

Luke 7:38

anointed them with perfumed oil

"poured perfume on them"

Luke 7:39

he thought to himself, saying

"he said to himself"

If this man were a prophet, then he would know who and what type of woman is touching him, that she is a sinner

The Pharisee thought that Jesus was not a prophet because he allowed the sinful woman to touch him. Alternate

translation: "Apparently Jesus is not a prophet, because a prophet would know that this woman who is touching him is a sinner"

that she is a sinner

Simon assumed that a prophet would never allow a sinner

to touch him. This part of his assumption can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "that she is a sinner, and he would not allow her to touch him"

Luke 7:40

Simon

This was the name of the Pharisee who invited Jesus into his home. This was not Simon Peter.

Luke 7:41

General Information:

To emphasize what he is going to tell Simon the Pharisee, Jesus tells him a story.

A certain moneylender had two debtors

"Two men owed money to a certain moneylender"

five hundred denarii ... fifty

"500 days' wages ... 50." "Denarii" is the plural of "denarius."

A "denarius" was a silver coin.

the other fifty

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the other debtor owed fifty denarii" or "the other debtor owed 50 days' wages"

Luke 7:42

he forgave them both

"he forgave their debts" or "he canceled their debts"

Luke 7:43

I suppose

Simon was cautious about his answer. Alternate translation: "Probably"

You have judged correctly

"You are right"

Luke 7:44

Jesus turned to the woman

Jesus directed Simon's attention to the woman by turning to her.

You gave me no water for my feet

It was a basic responsibility of a host to provide water and a towel for guests to wash and dry their feet after walking on dusty roads.

You ... but she

Jesus twice uses these phrases to contrast Simon's lack of courtesy with the woman's extreme actions of gratitude.

she has wet my feet with her tears

The woman used her tears in place of the missing water.

wiped them with her hair

The woman used her hair in place of the missing towel.

Luke 7:45

You did not give me a kiss

A good host in that culture would greet his guest with a kiss on the cheek. Simon did not do this.

did not stop kissing my feet

"has continued to kiss my feet"

kissing my feet

The woman kissed the feet of Jesus rather than his cheek as a sign of extreme repentance and humility.

Luke 7:46

You did not ... but she

Jesus continues to contrast Simon's poor hospitality with the actions of the woman.

anoint my head with oil

"put oil on my head." This was the custom to welcome an honored guest. Alternate translation: "welcome me by anointing my head with oil"

anointed my feet

The woman greatly honored Jesus by doing this. She demonstrated humility by anointing his feet instead of his head.

Luke 7:47

I say to you

This emphasizes the importance of the statement that follows.

her sins, which were many, have been forgiven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God has forgiven her many sins"

for she loved much

Her love was the evidence that her sins were forgiven.

Some languages require that the object of "love" be stated.

Alternate translation: "for she greatly loves the one who forgave her" or "for she loves God very much"

the one who is forgiven little

"anyone who is forgiven only a few things." In this sentence Jesus states a general principle. However, he expected Simon to understand that he showed very little love for Jesus.

Luke 7:48

Then he said to her

"Then he said to the woman"

Your sins are forgiven

"You are forgiven." This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: "I forgive your sins"

Luke 7:49

reclining together

"reclining together around the table" or "eating together"

Who is this that even forgives sins?

The religious leaders knew that only God could forgive sins and did not believe that Jesus was God. This question was probably intended to be an accusation. Alternate

translation: "Who does this man think he is? Only God can forgive sins!" or "Why is this man pretending to be God,

who alone can forgive sins?"

Luke 7:50

Your faith has saved you

"Because of your faith, you are saved." The abstract noun "faith" could be stated as an action. Alternate translation:

"Because you believe, you are saved"

Go in peace

This is a way of saying good-bye while giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: "As you go, do not worry anymore" or "May God give you peace as you go"

---

## Chapter 8

# Luke 8 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Several times in this chapter Luke changes his topic without marking the change. You should not try to make these rough changes smooth.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Miracles

Jesus made a storm stop by speaking to it, he made a dead girl alive by speaking to her, and he made evil spirits leave a man by speaking to them. (See: miracle)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Parables

The parables were short stories that Jesus told so that people would easily understand the lesson he was trying to teach them. He also told the stories so that those who did not want to believe in him would not understand the truth ([Luke 8:4-15](#)).

### Links:

[Luke 8:1 Notes](#)

---

#### Luke 8:1

##### General Information:

These verses give background information about Jesus's preaching while traveling.

##### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark a new part of the story.

#### Luke 8:2

who had been healed of evil spirits and diseases

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"whom Jesus had set free from evil spirits and healed of diseases"

#### Mary

One of the "certain women."

Mary who was called Magdalene ... seven demons had been driven out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"Mary, whom people called Magdalene ... Jesus had driven out seven demons"

#### Luke 8:3

Joanna ... Susanna

Two of the "certain women"

Joanna, the wife of Chuza, Herod's manager

Joanna was Chuza's wife, and Chuza was Herod's manager.

"Joanna, the wife of Herod's manager, Chuza"

provided for their needs

"financially supported Jesus and his twelve disciples"

#### Luke 8:4

##### General Information:

Jesus tells the parable of the soils to the crowd. He explains its meaning to his disciples in 8:11:15.

coming to him

"coming to Jesus"

#### Luke 8:5

A farmer went out to sow his seed

"A farmer went out to scatter some seed in a field" or "A farmer went out to scatter some seeds in a field"

some fell

"some of the seed fell" or "some of the seeds fell"

it was trampled underfoot

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"people walked on it" or "people walked on them"

birds of the sky

This idiom can be translated simply as "birds" or as "birds flew down and" to keep the sense of "sky."

devoured it

"ate it all" or "ate them all"

#### Luke 8:6

it withered away

"each plant became dry and shriveled up" or "the plants became dry and shriveled up"

it had no moisture

"it was too dry" or "they were too dry." The cause can also be stated. Alternate translation: "the ground was too dry"

#### Luke 8:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling the parable to the crowd.

choked it

The thorn plants took all the nutrients, water, and sunlight, so the farmer's plants could not grow well.

#### Luke 8:8

produced a crop

"grew a harvest" or "grew more seeds"

a hundred times greater

This means a hundred times more than the seeds that were sown.

Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "ears to hear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. Alternate translation: "Let the one who is willing to listen, listen" or "The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey" or "If you are willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

#### Luke 8:9

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 8:10

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to speak to his disciples.

The knowledge of ... God has been given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God has given to you the knowledge of ... God" or "God has made you able to understand ... God"

the secrets of the kingdom of God

These are truths that have been hidden, but that Jesus is now revealing them.

for others

"for other people." This refers to the people who rejected the teaching of Jesus and did not follow him.

seeing they may not see

"though they see, they will not perceive." This is a quote from the prophet Isaiah. Some languages may need to state the object of the verbs. Alternate translation: "though they see things, they will not understand them" or "though they see things happen, they will not understand what they mean"

hearing they may not understand

"though they hear, they will not understand." This is a quote from the prophet Isaiah. Some languages may need to state the object of the verbs. Alternate translation: "though they hear instruction, they will not understand the truth"

Luke 8:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to explain the meaning of the parable that he told in [Luke 8:5-8](#).

The seed is the word of God

"The seed is the message from God"

Luke 8:12

The ones along the road are those

"The seeds that fell along the path are those." Jesus tells what happens to the seeds as it relates to people. Alternate translation: "The seeds that fell along the road represent people" or "In the parable, the seeds that fell along the road represent people"

are those who

Jesus speaks of the seeds showing something about people as if the seeds were the people. Alternate translation: "show what happens to people who"

the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds or inner beings. Alternate translation: "the devil comes and takes away the message of God from their inner thoughts"

takes away

In the parable this was a metaphor of a bird snatching away the seeds. Try to use words in your language that keep that image.

hearts so they may not believe and be saved.

This is the devil's purpose. Alternate translation: "hearts because the devil thinks, 'They must not believe and they must not be saved.'" or "hearts so it will not be that they believe and God saves them."

Luke 8:13

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 8:14

The seeds that fell among the thorns are people

"The seeds that fell among the thorns represent people" or "In the parable the seeds that fell among the thorns represent people"

they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the cares and riches and pleasures of this life choke them"

cares

things that people worry about

pleasures of this life

"the things in this life that people enjoy"

they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life, and their fruit does not mature

This metaphor refers to the way weeds cut off light and nutrients from plants and keep them from growing.

Alternate translation: "as weeds prevent good plants from growing, the cares, riches, and pleasures of this life keep these people from becoming mature"

their fruit does not mature

"they do not bear ripe fruit." Mature fruit is a metaphor for good works. Alternate translation: "so like a plant that does not produce mature fruit, they do not produce good works" Luke 8:15

the seed that fell on the good soil, these are the ones

"the seed that fell on the good soil represents the people" or "in the parable the seed that fell on the good soil represents the people"

hearing the word

"hearing the message"

with an honest and good heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts or intentions. Alternate translation: "with an honest and good desire"

bear fruit with patient endurance

"produce fruit by enduring patiently" or "produce fruit by continued effort." Fruit is a metaphor for good works.

Alternate translation: "like healthy plants that produce good fruit, they produce good works by persevering"

Luke 8:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues with another parable.

No one

This marks the beginning of another parable.

Luke 8:17

nothing is hidden that will not be made known

This double negative can be written as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "everything that is hidden will be made known"

nor is anything secret that will not be known and come into the light

This double negative can be written as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "and everything that is secret will be made known and will come into the light"

Luke 8:18

to the one who has, more will be given to him

It is clear from the context that Jesus is talking about understanding and believing. This can be stated clearly and changed to active form. Alternate translation: "whoever has understanding will be given more understanding" or "God will enable those who believe the truth to understand even more"

the one who does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken away from him

It is clear from the context that Jesus is talking about understanding and believing. This can be stated clearly and changed to active form. Alternate translation: "whoever does not have understanding will lose even what

understanding he thinks he has" or "God will cause those who do not believe the truth not to understand even the little that they think they have understood"

Luke 8:19

brothers

These were Jesus's younger brothers—the sons of Mary and Joseph who were born after Jesus. Since the Father of Jesus was God, and their father was Joseph, they were technically his half-brothers. This detail is not normally translated.

Luke 8:20

He was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"People told him" or "Someone told him"

wanting to see you

"and they want to see you"

Luke 8:21

My mother and my brothers are those who hear the word of God and do it

This metaphor expresses that the people who were coming to listen to Jesus were as important to him as his own family was. Alternate translation: "Those who hear the word of God and obey it are like a mother and brothers to me"

the word of God

"the message God has spoken"

Luke 8:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus and his disciples use a boat to cross Lake Genneseret. The disciples learn more about Jesus's power through the storm that arises.

the lake

This is the lake of Genneseret, which is also called the Sea of Galilee.

They set sail

This expression means they began to travel across the lake in their sailboat.

Luke 8:23

as they sailed

"as they went"

fell asleep

"began to sleep"

A terrible windstorm came down

"A storm of very strong winds began" or "Very strong winds suddenly began to blow"

their boat was filling with water

The strong winds caused high waves which pushed water over the sides of the boat. This can be stated clearly.

Alternate translation: "the winds caused high waves that started to fill up their boat with water"

Luke 8:24

rebuked

spoke sharply to

the raging of the water

"the violent waves"

they ceased

"the wind and the waves stopped" or "they became still"

Luke 8:25

Where is your faith?

Jesus rebukes them mildly because they do not trust him to

take care of them. This can be written as a statement.

Alternate translation: "You should have faith!" or "You should trust me!"

Who then is this, that he commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him?

This question expresses shock and confusion over how

Jesus is able to control the storm. Alternate translation:

"What kind of man is this? He commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him!"

Luke 8:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus and his disciples come ashore at Gerasa, where Jesus removes many demons from a man.

the region of the Gerasenes

Gerasenes were people from the city called Gerasa.

across the lake from Galilee

"on the other side of the lake from Galilee"

Luke 8:27

a certain man from the city

"a man from the city of Gerasa"

a certain man from the city who had demons

The man had demons; it was not the city that had demons.

Alternate translation: "a certain man from the city, and this man had demons"

who had demons

"who was controlled by demons" or "whom demons

controlled"

For a long time he had worn no clothes ... but among the tombs

This is background information about the man who had demons.

he had worn no clothes

"he had not worn clothes"

tombs

These are places where people put dead bodies, possibly caves or small buildings that the man could use for shelter.

Luke 8:28

When he saw Jesus

"When the man who had the demon saw Jesus"

he cried out

"he screamed" or "he shrieked"

fell down before him

"lay down on the ground before Jesus." He did not fall accidentally.

he said with a loud voice

"he said loudly" or "he shouted out"

What have you to do with me

This idiom means "Why are you bothering me?"

Son of the Most High God

This is an important title for Jesus.

Luke 8:29

many times it had seized him

"many times it had taken control of the man" or "many times it had gone into him." This tells about what the demon had done many times before Jesus met the man.

though he was bound ... and kept under guard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"though the people had bound him ... and guarded him"

he would be driven by the demon

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the



demon would make him go"

Luke 8:30

Legion

Translate this with a word that refers to a large number of soldiers or people. Some other translations say "Army."

Alternate translation: "Battalion" or "Brigade"

Luke 8:31

kept begging him

"kept begging Jesus"

Luke 8:32

Now a large herd of pigs was there feeding on the hillside

This is supplied as background information to introduce the pigs.

was there feeding on the hillside

"was nearby eating grass on a hill"

Luke 8:33

So the demons came out

The word "so" is used here to explain that the reason the demons came out the man was because Jesus had told them that they could go into the pigs.

rushed

ran very fast

the herd ... was drowned

"the herd ... drowned." No one caused the pigs to drown once they were in the water.

Luke 8:34

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 8:35

found the man from whom the demons had gone out

"saw the man whom the demons had left"

in his right mind

"sane" or "behaving normally"

sitting at the feet of Jesus

"sitting at the feet" here is an idiom that means "sitting humbly nearby" or "sitting in front of." Alternate translation: "sitting on the ground in front of Jesus"

they were afraid

It may be helpful to state explicitly that they were afraid of Jesus. Alternate translation: "they were afraid of Jesus"

Luke 8:36

those who had seen it

"those who had seen what had happened"

the man who had been possessed by demons had been healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"Jesus had healed the man whom demons had possessed" or "Jesus had healed the man whom demons had controlled"

Luke 8:37

the region of the Gerasenes

"that area of the Gerasenes" or "the area where the Gerasene people lived." See how you translated this in 8:26

Luke 8:26

they were overwhelmed with great fear

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"they were very afraid"

and returned

This is not the last thing that Jesus did in that place, so this can also be stated as "in order to return" or "to go back."

returned

The destination can be stated. Alternate translation:

"returned across the lake"

Luke 8:38

The man

The events in these verses happened before Jesus left in the boat. It may be helpful to state this clearly at the beginning. Alternate translation: "Before Jesus and his disciples left, the man" or "Before Jesus and his disciples set sail, the man"

Luke 8:39

your home

"your household" or "your family"

give a full account of what God has done for you

"tell them everything about what God has done for you"

Luke 8:40

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus and his disciples return to Galilee on the other side of the lake, he heals the 12-year-old daughter of the ruler of the synagogue as well as a woman who has been bleeding for 12 years (8:43-48).

the crowd welcomed him

"the crowd joyfully greeted him"

Luke 8:41

one of the leaders of the synagogue

"one of the leaders at the local synagogue" or "a leader of the people who met at the synagogue in that city"

fell down at Jesus' feet

Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Jairus did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

Luke 8:42

was dying

"was about to die"

As Jesus was on his way

Some translators may need to first say that Jesus had agreed to go with Jairus. Alternate translation: "So Jesus agreed to go with him. As he was on his way"

the crowds of people pressed together around him

"the people were crowding tightly around Jesus"

Luke 8:43

a woman was there

This introduces a new character in the story.

had been bleeding

"had a flow of blood." She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition.

and could not be healed by anyone

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but no one could heal her"

Luke 8:44

touched the edge of his coat

"touched the fringe of his robe." Jewish men wore tassels on the edges of their robes as a part of their ceremonial dress as commanded in God's Law. This is likely what she touched.

Luke 8:45

the crowds of people are all around you and they are pressing in against you

By saying this, Peter was implying that anyone could have touched Jesus. This implicit information can be made explicit if necessary. Alternate translation: "there are many people crowding around you and pressing in against you, so any one of them might have touched you"

Luke 8:46

Someone did touch me

It may be helpful to distinguish this intentional "touch" from the accidental touches of the crowd. Alternate translation: "Someone deliberately touched me"

I know that power has gone out from me

Jesus did not lose power or become weak, but his power healed the woman. Alternate translation: "I know that healing power went out from me" or "I felt my power heal someone"

Luke 8:47

that she could not escape notice

"that she could not keep secret what she had done." It may be helpful to state what she did. Alternate translation: "that she could not keep it a secret that she was the one who had touched Jesus"

she came trembling

"she came trembling with fear"

fell down before him

Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down in front of Jesus" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus's feet." She did not fall accidentally. This was a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

In the presence of all the people

"In the sight of all the people"

Luke 8:48

Daughter

This was a kind way of speaking to a woman. Your language may have another way of showing this kindness. your faith has made you well

"because of your faith, you have become well." The abstract noun "faith" could be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "because you believe, you are healed"

Go in peace

This idiom is a way of saying, "Goodbye" and giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: "As you go, do not worry anymore" or "May God give you peace as you go"

Luke 8:49

While he was still speaking

"While Jesus was still speaking to the woman"

synagogue leader

This refers to Jairus (Luke 8:41).

Do not trouble the teacher

This statement implies that Jesus will not be able to do anything to help now that the girl is dead.

the teacher

This refers to Jesus.

Luke 8:50

she will be healed

"she will be well" or "she will live again"

Luke 8:51

When he came to the house

"When they came to the house." Jesus went there with

Jairus. Some of Jesus's disciples also went with them.

he allowed no one to enter with him, except Peter ... mother

This double negative emphasizes that Peter and the others were the only ones whom Jesus allowed to enter. This could be stated positively. Alternate translation: "he allowed only Peter ... mother to enter with him"

the father of the child

This refers to Jairus.

Luke 8:52

all were mourning and wailing for her

This was the normal way of showing grief in that culture.

Alternate translation: "all the people there were showing how sad they were and crying loudly because the girl had died"

Luke 8:53

began to mock him, knowing that she

"laughed at him because they knew the girl"

Luke 8:54

he took her by the hand

"Jesus took hold of the girl's hand"

Luke 8:55

Her spirit returned

"Her spirit returned to her body." The Jews understood that life was the result of the spirit coming into a person.

Alternate translation: "She started breathing again" or "She came back to life" or "She became alive again"

Luke 8:56

to tell no one

This could be stated differently. Alternate translation: "not to tell anyone"

---

## Chapter 9

# Luke 9 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

"To preach the kingdom of God"

No one knows for sure what the words "kingdom of God" here refer to. Some say it refers to the reign of God on earth, and others say it refers to the gospel message that Jesus died to pay for his people's sins. It is best to translate this as "to preach about the kingdom of God" or "to teach them about how God was going to show himself as king."

Elijah

God had promised the Jews that the prophet Elijah would return before the Messiah came, so some people who saw Jesus do miracles thought Jesus was Elijah ([Luke 9:9](#), [Luke 9:19](#)). However, Elijah did come to earth to speak with Jesus ([Luke 9:30](#)). (See: prophet and christ and elijah)

"Kingdom of God"

The term "kingdom of God" is used in this chapter to refer to a kingdom that was still in the future when the words were spoken. (See: kingdomofgod)

Glory

Scripture often speaks of God's glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. Luke says in this chapter that Jesus's clothing shone with this glorious light so that his followers could see that Jesus truly was God's Son. At the same time, God told them that Jesus was his Son. (See: glory and fear)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. An example in this chapter is: "Whoever would save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for my sake will save it." ([Luke 9:24](#)).

"Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

"Receiving"

This word appears several times in this chapter and means different things. When Jesus says, "If someone receives a little child like this in my name, he also is receiving me, and if someone receives me, he is also receiving the one who sent me" ([Luke 9:48](#)), he is speaking of people serving the child. When Luke says, "the people there did not receive him" ([Luke 9:53](#)), he means that the people did not believe in or accept Jesus. (See: believe)

Links:

[Luke 9:1 Notes](#)

Luke 9:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus reminds his disciples not to depend on money and their things, gives them power, and then sends them out to various places.

power and authority

These two terms are used together to show that the twelve had both the ability and the right to heal people. Translate this phrase with a combination of words that include both of these ideas.

all demons

Possible meanings are 1) "every demon" or 2) "every kind of demon."

diseases

sicknesses

Luke 9:2

sent them out

"sent them to various places" or "told them to go"

Luke 9:3

He said to them

"Jesus said to the twelve." It may be helpful to state that this happened before they went out. Alternate translation:

"Before they left, Jesus said to them"

Take nothing

"Do not take anything with you" or "Do not bring anything with you"

staff

large stick that people use for balance when climbing or walking on uneven ground, as well as for defense against attackers

wallet

a bag a traveler uses for carrying what he needs on a journey

bread

This is here used as a general reference to "food."

Luke 9:4

Whatever house you enter

"Any house you enter"

stay there

"remain there" or "temporarily live in that house as a guest"

until you leave

"until you leave that town" or "until you leave that place"

Luke 9:5

Wherever they do not receive you, when you leave

"Here is what you should do in any town where people do not receive you: When you leave"

shake off the dust from your feet as a testimony against them

To "shake off the dust from your feet" was an expression of strong rejection in that culture. It showed they did not want even the dust of that town to remain on them.

Luke 9:6

they departed

"they left the place where Jesus was"

healing everywhere

"healing wherever they went"

Luke 9:7

General Information:

Verses 7-9 interrupt the story to give information about Herod.

Now Herod

The word "Now" marks a pause in the main story. Here Luke tells background information about Herod.

Herod the tetrarch

This refers to Herod Antipas, who was the ruler of one-fourth of Israel.

perplexed

unable to understand, confused

it was said by some

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"some people said"

Luke 9:8

still others that one of the prophets of long ago had risen

The word "said" is understood from the previous phrase.

Alternate translation: "still others said that one of the prophets of long ago had risen"

Luke 9:9

I beheaded John. Who is this

Herod assumes that it is impossible for John to rise from the dead. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "It cannot be John because I had his head cut off. So who is this man"

I beheaded John

Herod's soldiers would have carried out executions.

Alternate translation: "I commanded my soldiers to cut off John's head"

Luke 9:10

Connecting Statement:

Though the disciples return to Jesus and they go to Bethsaida to spend time together, the crowds follow Jesus for healing and to listen to his teaching. He performs a miracle to provide bread and fish to the crowds as they return home.

apostles returned

"apostles came back to where Jesus was"

everything they had done

This refers to the teaching and healing that they did when they went to the other cities.

Bethsaida

This is the name of a city.

Luke 9:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 9:12

the day was about to come to an end

"the day was about to end" or "it was near the end of the day." The end of the day was at sunset. Alternate translation: "it was almost sunset"

an isolated place

This was a place far away from where people lived.

Alternate translation: "a remote place" or "a place where no one lives"

Luke 9:13

five loaves of bread

A loaf of bread is a lump of dough that is shaped and baked.

two fish—unless we go and buy food for all these people

If "unless" is difficult to understand in your language, you could make a new sentence. "two fish. In order to feed all these people, we would have to go and buy food"

Luke 9:14

about five thousand men

"about 5,000 men." This number does not include the women and children who might have been present.

Have them sit down

"Tell them to sit down"

fifty each

"50 each"

Luke 9:15

So they did this

"This" refers to what Jesus told them to do Luke 9:14. They told the people to sit down in groups of about fifty people.

Luke 9:16

Taking the five loaves

"Jesus took the five loaves of bread"

up to heaven

This refers to looking up, toward the sky. The Jews believed that heaven was located above the sky.

he blessed them

This refers to the loaves of bread and the fish.

to set before

"to pass out to" or "to give to"

Luke 9:17

were satisfied

This idiom means they ate enough food so they were not hungry. Alternate translation: "they had as much as they wanted to eat"

Luke 9:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus is praying, with only his disciples near him, and they begin to talk about who Jesus is. Jesus tells them that he will soon die and resurrect and urges them to follow him even if it becomes very hard to do that.

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event.

praying by himself

"praying alone." The disciples were with Jesus, but he was praying personally and privately by himself.

Luke 9:19

John the Baptist

It may be helpful to restate part of the question here.

Alternate translation: "The crowds say you are John the Baptist"

that one of the prophets from long ago has risen

It may be helpful to clarify how this answer relates to

Jesus's question. Alternate translation: "that you are one of the prophets from long ago and have risen"

has risen

"has come back to life"

Luke 9:20

Then he said to them

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

Luke 9:21

he warned and instructed them

The combination of "warned" and "instructed" is a hendiadys that means "strongly warned" or "strictly instructed." Alternate translation: "he strongly warned them" or "he strictly instructed them"

them to tell this to no one.

"not to tell anyone." or "that they should not tell anyone."

This could be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "them, 'Do not tell anyone.'"

Luke 9:22

The Son of Man must suffer many things

"People will cause the Son of Man to suffer greatly"

The Son of Man ... and he will

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man ... and I will"

be rejected by the elders and chief priests and scribes

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the elders, chief priests, and scribes will reject him"

he will be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
"they will kill him"

on the third day

"three days after he dies" or "on the third day after his death"

be raised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
"God will make him alive again" or "he will live again"

Luke 9:23

he said

"Jesus said"

to them all

This refers to the disciples who were with Jesus.

come after me

Coming after Jesus represents being one of his disciples.

Alternate translation: "be my disciple" or "be one of my disciples"

must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

take up his cross daily and follow me

"carry his cross and follow me every day." The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. To follow Jesus represents obeying him. Alternate translation: "must obey me every day even to the point of suffering and dying"

Luke 9:24

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 9:25

What profit is there for a person to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself?

The implied answer to this question is that it is not good.

Alternate translation: "It will not benefit someone at all to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself."

to gain the whole world

"to get everything in the world"

lose or forfeit himself

"ruin himself or give up his life"

Luke 9:26

my words

"what I say" or "what I teach"

of him will the Son of Man be ashamed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Son of Man will also be ashamed of him"

the Son of Man ... when he comes in his own glory

Jesus was speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man ... when I come in my own glory"

the Father

This is an important title for God.

Luke 9:27

But truly I say to you

Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

there are some standing here who will not taste death

"some of you who are standing here will not taste death"

before they see

Jesus was speaking to the people he was talking about.

Alternate translation: "before you see"

will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God

"Taste death" is an idiom that means "die." This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "will see the kingdom of God before they die" or "will see the kingdom of God before you die"

Luke 9:28

Connecting Statement:

Eight days after Jesus tells his disciples that some would not die before they saw the kingdom of God, Jesus goes up the mountain to pray with Peter, James, and John, who all fall asleep while Jesus is changed to a dazzling appearance.

these words

This refers to what Jesus said to his disciples in the preceding verses.

Luke 9:29

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 9:30

Behold

The word "Behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Alternate translation:

"Suddenly"

Luke 9:31

who appeared in glory

This phrase gives information about how Moses and Elijah looked. Some languages would translate it as a separate clause. Alternate translation: "and they appeared in glorious splendor" or "and they were shining brightly" his departure

"his leaving" or "how Jesus would leave this world." This was a polite way of talking about his death. Alternate translation: "his death"

Luke 9:32

Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the main story.

Here Luke tells about Peter, James, and John.

heavy with sleep

This idiom means "very sleepy."

they saw his glory

This refers to the brilliant light that surrounded them.

Alternate translation: "they saw brilliant light coming from Jesus" or "they saw very bright light coming out of Jesus"

the two men who were standing with him

This refers to Moses and Elijah.

Luke 9:33

As they were going away

"As Moses and Elijah were going away"

shelters

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

Luke 9:34

As he was saying this

"While Peter was saying these things"

they were afraid

These adult disciples were not afraid of clouds. This phrase indicates that some kind of unusual fear came over them with the cloud. Alternate translation: "they were terrified"

they entered into the cloud

This can be expressed in terms of what the cloud did.

Alternate translation: "the cloud surrounded them"

Luke 9:35

A voice came out of the cloud

It is understood that the voice could only have belonged to God. Alternate translation: "God spoke to them from the cloud"

Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

the one who is chosen

This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: "the one I have chosen" or "I have chosen him"

Luke 9:36

They kept silent ... what they had seen

This is information that tells what happened after the story as a result of the events in the story itself.

kept silent ... told no one

The first phrase refers to their immediate response, and the second refers to what they did in the following days.

Luke 9:37

Connecting Statement:

The next day after Jesus's dazzling appearance, Jesus heals a demon-possessed boy that the disciples were unable to make better.

Luke 9:38

Behold, a man from the crowd

The word "behold" alerts us to the new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. English uses "There was a man in the crowd who"

Luke 9:39

You see, a spirit

The phrase "You see" introduces us to the evil spirit in the man's story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "There is an evil spirit that"

he foams at the mouth

"foam comes out of his mouth." When a person has a seizure, he can have trouble breathing or swallowing. This causes white foam to form around his mouth.

Luke 9:40

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 9:41

Jesus answered and said

"Jesus answered by saying"

You unbelieving and perverse generation

Jesus says this to the crowd that has gathered, and not to his disciples.

perverse generation

"corrupt generation"

how long must I be with you and put up with you?

Here "you" is plural. Jesus uses these questions to express his sadness that the people do not believe. They can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "I have been with you so long, yet you do not believe. I wonder how long I must put up with you."

Bring your son here

Here "your" is singular. Jesus is speaking directly to the father who addressed him.

Luke 9:42

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 9:43

they were all amazed at the greatness of God

Jesus performed the miracle, but the crowd recognized that God was the power behind the healing.

everything he was doing

"everything Jesus was doing"

Luke 9:44

Let these words go deeply into your ears

This is an idiom that means they should pay attention.

Alternate translation: "Listen carefully and remember" or "Do not forget this"

The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men

This can be stated with an active clause. Here "hands" refers to power or control. Alternate translation: "Someone will betray the Son of Man and put him under the control of men"

The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. The word "hands" is a synecdoche for the people whose hands they are or a metonym for the power that uses those hands. You may need to make explicit who these men are.

Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men" or "The Son of Man will be betrayed into the power of his enemies" or "I, the Son of Man will be betrayed to my enemies"

Luke 9:45

It was hidden from them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God hid the meaning from them"

Luke 9:46

General Information:

The disciples begin to argue about who will be the most powerful among them.

among them

"among the disciples"

Luke 9:47

knowing the reasoning in their hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for their minds. Alternate translation: "knowing the reasoning in their minds" or "knowing what they were thinking"

Luke 9:48

in my name

This refers to a person doing something as a representative of Jesus. Alternate translation: "because of me"

in my name welcomes me

This metaphor could also be stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "in my name, it is like he is welcoming me"

the one who sent me

"God, who sent me"

the one who is great

"the one whom God considers to be most important"

Luke 9:49

John answered

"In reply, John said" or "John replied to Jesus." John was responding to what Jesus had said about being the greatest. He was not answering a question.

we saw

John speaks of himself but not Jesus, so "we" here is exclusive.

in your name

This means the person was speaking with the power and authority of Jesus.

Luke 9:50

Do not stop him

This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "Allow him to continue"

whoever is not against you is for you

Some modern languages have sayings that mean the same thing. Alternate translation: "if a person does not keep you from working, it is as if he were helping you" or "if someone is not working against you, he is working with you"

Luke 9:51

General Information:

It is now obvious that Jesus has decided to go to Jerusalem.

When the days drew near for him to be taken up

Here "be taken up" implies that Jesus will be taken up to heaven. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When the time was coming for him to go up heaven" or "When it was almost time for him to leave this world"

set his face

This idiom means he "firmly decided." Alternate

translation: "made up his mind" or "decided"

Luke 9:52

to prepare everything for him

This means to make arrangements for his arrival there, possibly including a place to speak, a place to stay, and food.

Luke 9:53

did not welcome him

"did not want him to stay"

because he had set his face to go to Jerusalem

The Samaritans and the Jews hated each other. Therefore the Samaritans would not help Jesus on his journey to Jerusalem, the Jewish capital.

Luke 9:54

saw this

"saw that the Samaritans did not receive Jesus"

command fire to come down from heaven and destroy them

James and John suggested this method of judgment because they knew that this was how the prophets such as Elijah had judged people who rejected God.

Luke 9:55

he turned and rebuked them

"Jesus turned and rebuked James and John." Jesus did not condemn the Samaritans as the disciples expected.

Luke 9:56

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 9:57

someone

This was not one of the disciples.

Luke 9:58

Foxes have holes ... nowhere to lay his head

Jesus responds with a proverb to teach the man about being Jesus's disciple. Jesus implies that if the man were to follow him, that man too might not have a home. Alternate

translation: "Foxes have holes ... nowhere to lay his head. So do not expect that you will have a home"

Foxes

These are land animals similar to small dogs. They sleep in a den or a burrow in the ground.

birds in the sky

"birds that fly in the air"

the Son of Man has ... his head

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, have ... my head"

nowhere to lay his head

"nowhere to rest my head" or "nowhere to sleep." Jesus exaggerates to emphasize that he has no permanent home and that people did not often invite him to stay with them.

Luke 9:59

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk with the people along the road.

Follow me

By saying this Jesus is asking the person to become his disciple and to go with him.

first let me go and bury my father

It is unclear whether the man's father has died and he will bury him immediately, or if the man wants to stay for a longer amount of time until his father dies so he can bury him then. The main point is the man wants to do something else first before he follows Jesus.

first let me go

"before I do that, let me go"

Luke 9:60

Leave the dead to bury their own dead

Jesus does not mean literally that dead people will bury other dead people. Possible meanings of "the dead" are 1) it is a metaphor for those who will soon die, or 2) it is a metaphor for those who do not follow Jesus and are spiritually dead. The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus.

the dead

This refers to dead people in general. Alternate translation: "the dead people"

Luke 9:61

I will follow you

"I will join you as a disciple" or "I am ready to follow you"

first let me say goodbye to those in my home

"before I do that, let me tell my people at my home that I am leaving"

Luke 9:62

No one ... fit for the kingdom of God

Jesus responds with a proverb to teach the man about being his disciple. Jesus means that a person is not suitable for the kingdom to God if he focuses on people in his past instead of following Jesus.

No one who puts his hand to the plow

Here "puts his hand to" something is an idiom that means the person starts to do something. Alternate translation:

"No one who starts to plow his field"

looks back

Anyone who is looking back while plowing cannot guide the plow where it needs to go. That person must focus on looking forward in order to plow well.

---

Chapter 10

## Luke 10 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Harvest

Harvest is when people go out to get the food they have planted so they can bring it to their houses and eat it. Harvest can also refer to the food that is gathered. Jesus used this as a metaphor to teach his followers that they need to go and tell other people about Jesus so those people can be part of God's kingdom. (See: harvest and faith)

#### Neighbor

A neighbor is anyone who lives nearby. The Jews helped their Jewish neighbors who needed help, and they expected their Jewish neighbors to help them. Jesus wanted them to understand that people who were not Jews were also their neighbors, so he told them a parable

### Links:

[Luke 10:1 Notes](#)

---

#### Luke 10:1

##### General Information:

Jesus sends out 70 more people ahead of him.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new event in the story.  
seventy

"70." Some versions say "seventy-two" or "72." You may want to include a footnote that says that.

sent them out two by two

"sent them out in groups of two" or "sent them out with two people in each group"

#### Luke 10:2

He said to them

This was before the men actually went out. Alternate translation: "He had said to them" or "Before they went out he told them"

The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few

"There is a big crop, but not enough workers to bring it in."

Jesus means there are many people ready to enter God's kingdom, but there are not enough disciples to go teach and help the people.

#### Luke 10:3

Go on your way

"Go to the cities" or "Go to the people"

I send you out as lambs in the midst of wolves

Wolves attack and kill sheep. This metaphor therefore means that there are people who would attempt to harm the disciples that Jesus is sending out. The names of other animals could be substituted. Alternate translation: "when I send you out, people will want to harm you, as wolves attack sheep"

#### Luke 10:4

Do not carry a money bag, or a traveler's bag, or sandals

"Do not take with you a bag, a traveler's bag, or sandals"

greet no one on the road

"do not greet anyone on the road." Jesus was emphasizing that they should go quickly to the towns and do this work. He was not telling them to be rude.

#### Luke 10:5

May peace be on this house

This was both a greeting and a blessing. Here "house" refers to those who live in the house. Alternate translation: "May the people in this household receive peace"

#### Luke 10:6

a son of peace

The phrase "son of peace" here is a metaphor for a person who wants peace with God and with people. Alternate translation: "a peaceful person"

your peace will rest upon him

Here "peace" is described as a living thing that can choose where to stay. Alternate translation: "he will have the peace you blessed him with"

if not

It may be helpful to restate the entire phrase. Alternate translation: "if there is no person of peace there" or "if the owner of the house is not a peaceful person"

it will return to you

Here "peace" is described as a living thing that can choose to leave. Alternate translation: "you will have that peace" or "he will not receive the peace you blessed him with"

#### Luke 10:7

Remain in that same house

Jesus was not saying that they should stay in the house all day, but that they should sleep at the same house every night they were there. Alternate translation: "Continue to sleep at that house"

for the laborer is worthy of his wages

This is a general principle that Jesus was applying to the men he was sending out. Since they would be teaching and healing the people, the people should provide them with a place to stay and with food.

Do not move around from house to house

Moving around from house to house means going to different houses. It can be made clear that he was talking about staying overnight at different houses. "Do not go sleep at a different house each night"

#### Luke 10:8

and they receive you

"if they welcome you"

eat what is set before you



This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "eat whatever food they give you"

Luke 10:9

the sick

This refers to sick people in general. Alternate translation: "the sick people"

The kingdom of God has come close to you

The abstract noun "kingdom" can be expressed with the verbs "reign" or "rule." Possible meanings are 1) the kingdom of God will begin soon. Alternate translation: "God will soon rule everywhere as king" or 2) the activities of kingdom of God are happening all around you. Alternate translation: "The proof that God is reigning is all around you"

Luke 10:10

and they do not receive you

"and the people of the city reject you"

Luke 10:11

Even the dust from your town that clings to our feet we wipe off against you

This is a symbolic action to show that they reject the people of the city. Alternate translation: "Just as you rejected us, we thoroughly reject you. We even reject the dust from your town that clings to our feet"

we wipe off

Since Jesus was sending these people out in groups of two, it would be two people saying this. So languages that have a dual form of "we" would use it.

But know this: The kingdom of God is near

The phrase "But know this" emphasizes the importance of what is said next. Alternate translation: "But be aware that the kingdom of God is near" or "But be sure of this: The kingdom of God is near"

The kingdom of God is near

The abstract noun "kingdom" can be expressed with the verbs "reign" or "rule." See how you translated a similar sentence in [Luke 10:8]

Luke 10:12

I say to you

Jesus was saying this to the 70 people he was sending out. He said this to show that he was about to say something very important.

that day

The disciples would have understood that this refers to the time of final judgment of sinners. Alternate translation: "judgment day"

it will be more tolerable for Sodom than for that town

"God will not judge Sodom as severely as he will judge that town." Alternate translation: "God will judge the people of that town more severely than he will judge the people of Sodom"

Luke 10:13

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida!

Jesus speaks as if the people of the cities of Chorazin and Bethsaida are there listening to him, but they are not.

If the mighty works which were done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon

Jesus is describing a situation that could have happened in the past but did not. Alternate translation: "If someone had

performed the miracles for the people of Tyre and Sidon that I performed for you"

they would have repented long ago, sitting

"the wicked people who lived there would have shown that they were sorry for their sins by sitting"

sitting in sackcloth and ashes

"wearing sackcloth and sitting in ashes"

Luke 10:14

But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the judgment than for you

It may be helpful to clearly state the reason for their judgment. Alternate translation: "But because you did not repent and believe in me even though you saw me do miracles, God will judge you more severely than he will judge the people of Tyre and Sidon"

at the judgment

"on that final day when God judges everyone"

Luke 10:15

You, Capernaum

Jesus now speaks to the people in the city of Capernaum as if they are listening to him, but they are not.

do you think you will be exalted to heaven?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the people of Capernaum for their pride. The expression "exalted to heaven" means "greatly exalted" or "honored." Alternate translation: "you will certainly not go up to heaven!" or "God will not honor you!"

you will be brought down to Hades

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will go down to Hades" or "God will send you to Hades"

Luke 10:16

The one who listens to you listens to me

The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "When someone listens to you, it is as if they were listening to me"

the one who rejects you rejects me

The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "when someone rejects you, it is as if they were rejecting me"

the one who rejects me rejects the one who sent me

The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "when someone rejects me, it is as if they were rejecting the one who sent me"

the one who sent me

This refers to God the Father, who appointed Jesus for this special task. Alternate translation: "God, who sent me"

Luke 10:17

The seventy returned

Some languages will need to say that the seventy actually went out first, as the UDB does. This is implicit information that can be made explicit.

seventy

You may want to add a footnote: "Some versions have '72' instead of '70.'"

in your name

Here "name" refers to Jesus's power and authority.

Luke 10:18

I was watching Satan fall from heaven as lightning

Jesus used a simile to compare how God was defeating Satan when his 70 disciples were preaching in the towns to the way lightning strikes.

fall from heaven as lightning

Possible meanings are 1) fall as quickly as lightning strikes, or 2) fall down from heaven as lightning strikes downward. Since both meanings are possible, it may be best to keep the image.

Luke 10:19

authority to tread on serpents and scorpions

"authority to trample on snakes and crush scorpions."

Possible meanings are 1) snakes and scorpions are a metaphor for evil spirits. Alternate translation: "the right to defeat evil spirits" or 2) this refers to actual snakes and scorpions.

tread on serpents and scorpions

This implies that they would do this and not be injured.

Alternate translation: "walk on snakes and scorpions, which will not hurt you,"

scorpions

Scorpions are small animals with two claws and a poisonous stinger on their tail.

over all the power of the enemy

"I have given you authority to crush the power of the enemy" or "I have given you authority to defeat the enemy." The enemy is Satan.

Luke 10:20

do not rejoice only in this, that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice

even more that your names are engraved in heaven

"do not rejoice only because the spirits submit to you" can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "rejoice that your names are written in heaven even more than you rejoice that the spirits submit to you"

your names are engraved in heaven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God has written your names in heaven" or "your names are on the list of people who are citizens of heaven"

Luke 10:21

that same hour

"that same time"

Father

This is an important title for God.

Lord of heaven and earth

The phrase "heaven" and earth" represents everything that exists. Alternate translation: "Master over everyone and everything in heaven and earth"

these things

This refers to Jesus's previous teaching about the authority of the disciples. It may be best to simply say "these things" and let the reader determine the meaning.

the wise and understanding

The words "wise" and "understanding" are nominal adjectives that refer to people with these qualities. Because God had concealed truth from them, these people were not actually wise and understanding, even though they thought they were. Alternate translation: "from people who think they are wise and have understanding"

those who are untaught, like little children

This refers to those who may not have much education but

who are willing to accept Jesus's teachings in the same way that little children willingly listen to those they trust.

Alternate translation: "people who may have little education, but who listen to God as little children do"

for so it was well pleasing in your sight

"for it pleased you to do this"

Luke 10:22

All things have been entrusted to me from my Father

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My Father has handed everything over to me"

Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

no one knows who the Son is except the Father

This double negative emphasizes that the Father is the only one who knows. Alternate translation: "The only one who knows who the Son is, is the Father"

knows ... knows

The word that is translated as "knows" means to know from personal experience. God the Father knows Jesus in this way.

the Son

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person.

no one knows who the Father is except the Son and those ... him

This double negative emphasizes that the Son is the only one who knows. Alternate translation: "The only one who knows who the Father is, is the Son"

those to whom the Son chooses to reveal him

"whoever the Son desires to show the Father to"

Luke 10:23

Then he turned around to the disciples and said privately

The word "privately" indicates that he was alone with his disciples. Alternate translation: "Later, when he was alone with his disciples, he turned to them and said"

Blessed are those who see the things that you see

This probably refers to the good works and miracles that Jesus was doing. Alternate translation: "How good it is for those who see the things that you see me doing"

Luke 10:24

and they did not see them

This implies that Jesus was not yet doing those things.

Alternate translation: "but they could not see them because I was not doing them yet"

the things that you hear

This probably refers to the teaching of Jesus. Alternate translation: "the things that you have heard me say"

and they did not hear them

This implies that Jesus was not yet teaching. Alternate translation: "but they could not hear them because I had not yet started to teach"

Luke 10:25

Connecting Statement:

Jesus replies with a story to a Jewish teacher who wants to test Jesus.

Behold, an expert in the law

This alerts us to a new event and a new person in the story. stood up

This is an idiom that probably here means "began to act."

Your language may have a different way of showing that

the expert in the law had been present, listening to Jesus, and was now beginning to act. He was not necessarily sitting before he "stood up" and began to speak.

test him

"challenge Jesus"

Luke 10:26

What is written in the law? How do you read it?

Jesus is not seeking information. He uses these questions to test the Jewish teacher's knowledge. Alternate translation: "Tell me what Moses wrote in the law and what you think it means."

What is written in the law?

This can be asked in active form. Alternate translation:

"What did Moses write in the law?"

How do you read it?

"What have you read in it?" or "What do you understand it to say?"

Luke 10:27

You will love ... neighbor as yourself

The man is quoting what Moses wrote in the law.

with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your strength, and with all your mind

Here "heart" and "soul" are metonyms for a person's inner being. These four phrases are used together to mean "completely" or "earnestly."

your neighbor as yourself

This simile can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

Luke 10:28

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 10:29

But he, desiring to justify himself, said

"But the expert in the law wanted to find a way to justify himself, so he said" or "But wanting to appear righteous, the expert in the law said"

Who is my neighbor?

The man wanted to know whom he was required to love. Alternate translation: "Whom should I consider to be my neighbor and love as I love myself?" or "Which people are my neighbors that I should love?"

Luke 10:30

Jesus answered him and said

Jesus answers the man by telling a parable. Alternate translation: "In response, Jesus told him this story"

A certain man

This introduces a new character in the parable.

He fell among robbers, who

"He was surrounded by robbers, who" or "Some robbers attacked him. They"

stripped him of his belongings

"took everything he had" or "stole all his things"

half dead

This idiom means "almost dead."

Luke 10:31

By chance

This was not something that any person had planned.

a certain priest

This expression introduces a new person in the story, but does not identify him by name.

and when he saw him

"and when the priest saw the injured man." A priest is a very religious person, so the audience would assume that he would help the injured man. Since he did not, this phrase could be stated as "but when he saw him" to call attention to this unexpected result.

he passed by on the other side

It is implied that he did not help the man. Alternate translation: "he did not help the injured man but instead walked past him on the other side of the road"

Luke 10:32

a Levite ... the other side

The Levite served in the temple. He would be expected to help his fellow Jewish man. Since he did not, it may be helpful to state that. Alternate translation: "a Levite ... the other side and did not help him"

Luke 10:33

But a certain Samaritan

This introduces a new person in the story without giving his name. We know only that he was from Samaria.

a certain Samaritan

The Jews despised the Samaritans and would have assumed that he would not help the injured Jewish man.

When he saw him

"When the Samaritan saw the injured man"

he was moved with compassion

"he felt sorry for him"

Luke 10:34

bound up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on them

He would have put the oil and wine on the wounds first.

Alternate translation: "he put wine and oil on the wounds and wrapped them with cloth"

pouring oil and wine on them

Wine was used to clean the wound, and oil was probably used to prevent infection. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "pouring oil and wine on them to help heal them"

his own animal

"his own pack animal." This was an animal that he used to carry heavy loads. It was probably a donkey.

Luke 10:35

two denarii

"two day's wages." "Denarii" is the plural of "denarius."

the host

"the innkeeper" or "the person who took care of the inn"

whatever extra you spend, when I return, I will repay you

This could be reordered. Alternate translation: "when I return, I will repay you whatever extra amount you spend"

Luke 10:36

Which of these three do you think ... robbers?

This could be written as two questions. Alternate translation: "What do you think? Which of these three men ... robbers?"

was a neighbor

"showed himself to be a true neighbor"

to him who fell among the robbers

"to the man whom the robbers attacked"

Luke 10:37

He said, "The one who showed mercy to him."

"The expert in the law said, "The one who showed mercy to him."

Go and do the same

Here "do the same" refers to showing mercy to others.

Alternate translation: "In the same way, go and show mercy to anyone else who needs help" or "In the same way, go and help everyone you can"

Luke 10:38

General Information:

Jesus comes to Martha's house, where her sister Mary listens to Jesus with great attention.

Now

This word is used here to mark a new event.

as they were traveling along

"as Jesus and his disciples were traveling along"

a certain village

This introduces the village as a new location, but does not name it.

a certain woman named Martha

This introduces Martha as a new character. Your language may have a way of introducing new people.

Luke 10:39

sat at the Lord's feet

This was the normal and respectful position for a learner at that time. Alternate translation: "sat on the floor near Jesus"

heard his word

This refers to everything that Jesus taught while at Martha's house. Alternate translation: "listened to the Lord teach"

Luke 10:40

overly busy

"very busy" or "too busy"

do you not care ... alone?

Martha is complaining that the Lord is allowing Mary to sit listening to him when there is so much work to do. She respects the Lord, so she uses a rhetorical question to make her complaint more polite. Alternate translation: "it seems like you do not care ... alone."

Luke 10:41

Martha, Martha

Jesus repeats Martha's name for emphasis. Alternate translation: "Dear Martha" or "You, Martha"

Luke 10:42

only one thing is necessary

Jesus is contrasting what Mary is doing with what Martha is doing. It may be helpful to make this explicit. Alternate translation: "the only thing that is really necessary is to listen to my teaching" or "listening to my teaching is more necessary than preparing a meal"

which will not be taken away from her

Possible meanings are 1) "and I will not take this opportunity away from her" or 2) "and she will not lose what she has gained as she was listening to me"

---

## Chapter 11

# Luke 11 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

The ULB sets the lines in 11:2-4 farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text because they are a special prayer.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### The Lord's Prayer

When Jesus's followers asked him to teach them how to pray, he taught them this prayer. He did not expect them to use the same words every time they prayed, but he did want them to know what God wanted them to pray about.

### Jonah

Jonah was an Old Testament prophet who was sent to the Gentile city of Nineveh to tell them to repent. When he told them to repent, they repented. (See: prophet and sin and repent)

### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: righteous)

### Washing

The Pharisees would wash themselves and the things they ate with. They would even wash things that were not dirty. The law of Moses did not tell them to wash these things, but they would wash them anyway. This was because they thought that if they obeyed both the rules that God had made and some rules that God had not made, God would think that they were better people. (See: lawofmoses and clean)

## Links:

[Luke 11:1 Notes](#)

---

Luke 11:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of the next part of the story. Jesus teaches his disciples to pray.

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new

part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Luke 11:2

Jesus said to them

"Jesus said to his disciples"

Father

Jesus is commanding the disciples to honor the name of God the Father by addressing him as "Father" when praying to him. This is an important title for God.

may your name be honored as holy

"cause everyone to honor your name." "Name" often refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "may all people honor you"

May your kingdom come

The action of God ruling over everyone is spoken of as if it were God himself. Alternate translation: "May you come and rule over everyone"

Luke 11:3

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples how to pray.

Give us

This is an imperative, but it should be translated as a request, rather than as a command. It may be helpful to add something such as "please" to it to make this clear.

Alternate translation: "Please give us"

our daily bread

Bread was an inexpensive food that people ate every day. It is used here to refer to food in general. Alternate translation: "the food we need each day"

Luke 11:4

Forgive us ... Do not lead us

These are imperatives, but they should be translated as requests, rather than as commands. It may be helpful to add something such as "please" to them to make this clear. Alternate translation: "Please forgive us ... Please do not lead us"

Forgive us our sins

"Forgive us for sinning against you" or "Forgive our sins"

as we forgive

"since we also forgive"

who is in debt to us

"who has sinned against us" or "who has done wrong things to us"

Do not lead us into temptation

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Lead us away from temptation"

Luke 11:5

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples about prayer.

lend to me three loaves of bread

"let me borrow three loaves of bread" or "give me three loaves of bread and I will pay you later." The host does not have any food ready to give to his guest.

three loaves of bread

Bread is a food that people in Israel commonly ate. If people in your community do not know what bread is, you may translate it with a more general expression for food. Alternate translation: "some food"

Luke 11:6

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking a question that begins in verse 5.

since a friend ... to set before him?

Jesus finishes asking the question that begins with the words "Which of you will have a friend" in verse 5. The whole question can be translated as a statement. Alternate

translation: "Suppose you have a friend and will go to him at midnight and say to him, 'Friend, lend to me three loaves of bread, since a friend ... to set before him.'"

just came in from the road

It is implied that the visitor has come far from his home.

Alternate translation: "was traveling and just came to my house"

anything to set before him

"any food ready to give him"

Luke 11:7

I am not able to get up

"It is not convenient for me to get up"

give bread to you

Bread is a food that people in Israel commonly ate. If people in your community do not know what bread is, you may translate it with a more general expression for food.

Alternate translation: "give you some food"

Luke 11:8

I say to you

Jesus was speaking to the disciples. The word "you" is plural.

give bread to you ... give you as many loaves of bread

Bread is a food that people in Israel commonly ate. If people in your community do not know what bread is, you may translate it with a more general expression for food.

Alternate translation: "give you some food ... give you as much food"

give bread to you because you are ... your ... you ... you need

Jesus addresses the disciples as if they were the ones asking for bread. Alternate translation: "give bread to him because he is ... his ... him ... he needs"

because of your shameless persistence

The phrase can be reworded to eliminate the abstract noun "persistence." Alternate translation: "because you persist shamelessly" or "because you boldly continue to ask him"

Luke 11:9

ask ... seek, and you will find ... knock

Jesus gives these commands to encourage his disciples to pray continually. Some languages may also require more information with these verbs. Use the form of "you" that would be most appropriate in this context. Alternate translation: "keep asking for what you need ... keep seeking what you need from God, and you will find it ... keep knocking on the door"

it will be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God will give it to you" or "you will receive it"

knock

To knock at a door is to hit it a few times to let a person inside the house know you are standing outside. It can also be translated using the way people in your culture show that they have arrived, such as "call out" or "cough" or "clap." Here, it means a person should keep praying to God until he answers.

it will be opened to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God will open the door for you" or "God will welcome you inside"

Luke 11:10

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 11:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching his disciples about prayer.

Which father among you ... will ... a fish?

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. It could also be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "None of you fathers ... would ... a fish."

Luke 11:12

Or ... egg, will you give a scorpion to him?

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. It could also be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "And you would never give him a scorpion ... egg."

scorpion

A scorpion is similar to a spider, but it has a tail with a poisonous sting. If scorpions are not known where you are, you could translate this as "poisonous spider" or "spider that stings"

Luke 11:13

if you who are evil know

"since you who are evil know" or "even though you are sinful, you know"

how much more will ... give ... him?

Jesus again uses a question to teach his disciples. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "you can be sure that ... will give ... him."

Luke 11:14

Now

The author uses this word to mark the beginning of a new event.

Jesus was driving out a demon

It may be helpful to add extra information. Alternate translation: "Jesus was driving a demon out of a person" or "Jesus was making a demon leave a person"

demon that was mute

The demon has power to prevent people from speaking. Alternate translation: "demon that caused the man to be unable to speak"

Now

This word is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. When the demon comes out of the man, some of the people criticize Jesus, and that leads to Jesus teaching about evil spirits.

When the demon had gone out

It may be helpful to add extra information. Alternate translation: "When the demon had gone out of the man" or "When the demon left the man"

the man who had been mute spoke

"the man who had been unable to speak now spoke"

Luke 11:15

General Information:

Jesus is accused of using Satan's power to drive a demon out of a mute man.

By Beelzebul, the ruler of demons, he is driving out demons

"He is driving out demons by the power of Beelzebul, the ruler of demons"

Beelzebul

another name for Satan

Luke 11:16

Others tested him

"Other people tested Jesus." They wanted him to prove that his authority was from God.

and sought from him a sign from heaven

"and asked him to give a sign from heaven" or "by demanding that he give a sign from heaven." This was how they wanted him to prove that his authority was from God.

Luke 11:17

General Information:

Jesus begins to respond to the crowd.

Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate

"kingdom" here refers to the people in it. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "If people of a kingdom fight among themselves, they will destroy their kingdom"

a house divided against itself falls

Here "house" refers to a family. Alternate translation: "if family members fight each other, they will ruin their family"

falls

"crashes down and is destroyed." This image of the house collapsing refers to the destruction of a family when the members fight each other.

Luke 11:18

If Satan is divided against himself

"Satan" here is referring to the demons who follow Satan as well as to Satan himself. Alternate translation: "If Satan and members of his kingdom are fighting among themselves"

If Satan ... how will his kingdom stand?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "If Satan ... his kingdom will not last." or "If Satan ... his kingdom will fall apart."

For you say I cast out demons by Beelzebul

"For you say that it is by the power of Beelzebul that I make demons leave people." The next part of his argument can be stated explicitly: Alternate translation: "For you say that it is by the power of Beelzebul that I make demons leave people. That would mean that Satan is divided against himself"

Luke 11:19

If I ... by whom do your followers drive them out?

"If I ... by whose power do your followers force demons to leave people?" Jesus uses a question to teach the people. The meaning of Jesus's question can be made explicit.

Alternate translation: "If I ... then we must agree that your followers also drive out demons by Beelzebul's power. But you do not believe that it is true."

they will be your judges

"your followers who cast out demons by God's power will judge you for saying that I cast out demons by Beelzebul's power"

Luke 11:20

by the finger of God

The "finger of God" refers to God's power.

then the kingdom of God has come to you

"this shows that God's kingdom has come to you"

Luke 11:21

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins a parable about a strong man who is defeated by a stronger man.

When a strong man ... are safe

The "strong man" here is a metaphor for Satan.

his own palace

Possible meanings of the word "palace" are 1) the entire premises of the "strong man" or 2) it refers to the courtyard of a palace and is a synecdoche for the palace. If you have a word for the house and other areas close to it that the strong man can constantly guard, you may want to use it here.

his possessions are safe

"no one can steal his things"

Luke 11:22

a stronger man

The stronger man in the parable is a metaphor for Jesus, who is stronger than Satan.

takes away the armor

"removes the weapons and protection"

plunders the man's possessions

"steals his possessions" or "takes away anything that he wants"

Luke 11:23

The one who is not with me is against me, and the one who does not gather with me scatters

This refers to any person or any group of people. "Anyone who is not with me is against me, and anyone who does not gather with me scatters" or "Those who are not with me are against me, and those who do not gather with me scatter"

one who is not with me

"one who does not support me" or "one who does not work with me"

is against me

"works against me"

the one who does not gather with me scatters

Jesus is referring to gathering disciples who follow him.

This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "anyone who does not cause people to come and follow me causes them to go away from me"

Luke 11:24

waterless places

This refers to "desolate places" where the evil spirits wander.

Finding none

"If the spirit does not find any rest there"

my house from which I came

This refers to the person in which he used to live. Alternate translation: "the person in whom I used to live"

Luke 11:25

finds the house had been swept clean and put in order

This metaphor speaks about the person as if he were a house that is swept clean, with things put in their places. It is implied that the house is still empty. This can be stated in active form with that information made explicit. Alternate translation: "finds that the person is like a house that someone has swept clean and organized by putting everything where it belongs, but has left empty" or "finds

that the person is like a house that is clean and organized, but empty"

Luke 11:26

worse than the first

The word "first" refers to the condition of the man while he had the unclean spirit before it left him. Alternate translation: "worse than his condition was before the spirit left"

Luke 11:27

General Information:

This is a break in Jesus's teachings. A woman speaks a blessing and Jesus responds.

It happened that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

raised her voice above the crowd

This idiom means "spoke loudly above the noise of the crowd"

Blessed is the womb that bore you and the breasts that nursed you

The parts of a woman's body are used to refer to the whole woman. Alternate translation: "How good it is for the woman who bore you and nursed you at her breasts" or "How happy the woman who bore you and nursed you at her breasts must be"

Luke 11:28

Rather, blessed are they

"It is even better for those"

hear the word of God

"hear the message God has spoken"

and keep it

"and obey it"

Luke 11:29

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching the crowd.

As the crowds were increasing

"As more people were joining the crowd" or "As the crowd was growing larger"

This generation is an evil generation. It seeks ... to it

Here "generation" refers to the people in it. Alternate

translation: "The people living at this time are evil people.

They seek ... to them" or "You people living at this time are evil people. You seek ... to you"

It seeks a sign

The information about what kind of sign it seeks can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "It wants me to perform a miracle as proof that I have come from God"

no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah

This double negative emphasizes that the sign of Jonah is the only sign that will be given. Alternate translation: "The only sign that will be given to it is the sign of Jonah"

no sign will be given to it

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God will not give it a sign"

the sign of Jonah

"what happened to Jonah" or "the miracle that God did for Jonah"

Luke 11:30

For just as Jonah became a sign ... so too ... this generation

This means that Jesus will serve as a sign from God for the Jews of that day in exactly the same way as Jonah served as a sign from God to the people of Nineveh.

Son of Man will

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will"

this generation

"the people living today"

Luke 11:31

Queen of the South

This refers to the Queen of Sheba. Sheba was a kingdom south of Israel.

will rise up

"will appear"

she came from the ends of the earth

This idiom means that she came from very far away.

Alternate translation: "she came a very great distance" or

"she came from a place very far away"

someone greater than Solomon is here

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, who am greater than Solomon, am here"

Luke 11:32

The men of Nineveh

It may be helpful to state explicitly that this refers to the ancient city of Nineveh. Alternate translation: "The men who lived in the ancient city of Nineveh"

The men

This includes both men and woman. Alternate translation:

"The people"

this generation of people

"the people of this time"

for they repented

"for the people of Nineveh repented"

someone greater than Jonah is here

Jesus is speaking about himself. It may be helpful to explicitly state that they have not listened to him. Alternate translation: "even though I am greater than Jonah, you still have not repented"

Luke 11:33

General Information:

Jesus begins a parable in which he speaks of his teaching as light that he wants his disciples to obey and share with others.

puts it in a hidden place or under a basket

"hides it or puts in under a basket"

but on a lampstand

The understood subject and verb in this clause may be supplied. Alternate translation: "but a person places it on a lampstand" or "but a person puts it on a table"

Luke 11:34

General Information:

Jesus continues his parable, in which he speaks of his teaching as light that he wants his disciples to obey and share with others. He speaks of people who do not know or accept his teaching as being in darkness.

Your eye is the lamp of the body

In this part of the metaphor, the things they saw Jesus do provided understanding just as an eye provides light for the body. Alternate translation: "Your eye is like the lamp of

the body"

Your eye

The eye is a metonym for vision.

the body

The body is a synecdoche for a person's life.

When your eye is good

Here "eye" here is a metonym for vision. Alternate translation: "When your vision is good" or "when you see well"

the whole body is filled with light

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the light will fill your whole body" or "you will be able to see everything clearly"

when your eye is bad

Here "eye" is a metonym for vision. Alternate translation:

"When your vision is bad" or "when you see poorly"

your body is full of darkness

"you will not be able to see anything"

Luke 11:35

General Information:

Jesus continues his parable, in which he speaks of his teaching as light that he wants his disciples to obey and share with others. He speaks of people who do not know or accept his teaching as being in darkness.

watch out that the light in you is not darkness

"look carefully to make sure that what you think is light is not actually darkness"

Luke 11:36

General Information:

Jesus ends his parable.

If then your whole body is full of light, not having any member in darkness

Jesus speaks of his teaching as light that he wants his disciples to obey and share with others. He speaks of people who do not know or accept his teaching as being in darkness.

not having any member in darkness

"with none of its parts in darkness"

then your whole body will be like when a lamp shines its brightness on you

Jesus states the same truth he has just presented as a metaphor, but this time he uses a simile. He speaks of people who are full of truth as if they are a lamp that shines brightly.

Luke 11:37

General Information:

Jesus finishes teaching the crowd, and a Pharisee invites Jesus to eat at his house.

When he had finished speaking

The author uses these words to mark the beginning of a new event.

at his house

This refers to the Pharisee's house.

reclined

It was the custom at a relaxed meal such as this dinner for men to eat while lying down comfortably around the table.

You might want to translate using the word your language uses for the way people's bodies are when they eat.

Alternate translation: "sat down at the table"



Luke 11:38

wash

The Pharisees had a rule that people must wash their hands in order to be ceremonially clean before God. Alternate translation: "wash his hands" or "wash his hands in order to be ritually clean"

Luke 11:39

General Information:

Jesus begins to speak to the Pharisee using a metaphor. He compares the way they clean cups and bowls to how they clean themselves.

the outside of cups and bowls

Washing of the outside of containers was a part of the ritual practices of the Pharisees.

but the inside of you is filled with robbery and evil

This part of the metaphor contrasts the careful way they clean the outside of the dishes with the way they ignore their own internal condition.

Luke 11:40

You senseless men

This expression can refer to men or women, even though all of the Pharisees to whom Jesus was speaking to here were men.

Did not the one who made the outside also make the inside?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the Pharisees for not understanding that what is in their hearts matters to God. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "The one who made the outside also made the inside!"

Luke 11:41

Give what is inside as alms

This refers to what they should be doing with their cups and bowls. Alternate translation: "Give what is inside your cups and bowls as alms" or "Be generous to the poor"

all things will be clean for you

"you will be completely clean" or "you will be clean both inside and outside"

Luke 11:42

you tithe mint and rue and every other garden herb

"you give God one tenth of your mint and rue and other herbs from your garden." Jesus was giving an example of how extreme the Pharisees were in giving a tenth of their income.

mint and rue

These are herbs. People put just a little bit of these leaves into their food to give it flavor. If people do not know what mint and rue are, you can use the name of herbs they know or a general expression such as "herbs."

every other garden herb

Possible meanings are 1) "every other vegetable" 2) "every other garden herb" or 3) "every other garden plant."

the love of God

"to love God" or "love for God." God is the one who is loved.

without failing to do the other things also

"without failing" emphasizes that this should always be done. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "and to always do the other good things as well"

Luke 11:43

the front seats

"the best seats"

respectful greetings

"you like people to greet you with special honor"

Luke 11:44

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking to the Pharisees.

you are like unmarked graves that people walk over without knowing it

The Pharisees are like unmarked graves because they look ceremonially clean, but they cause people around them to become unclean.

unmarked graves

These graves were holes dug in the ground where a dead body was buried. They did not have the white stones that people normally place over graves so that others would see them.

without knowing it

When the Jews walked over a grave, they would become ceremonially unclean. These unmarked graves caused them to accidentally do that. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "without realizing it and become ceremonially unclean"

Luke 11:45

General Information:

Jesus begins to respond to a Jewish teacher.

One of the experts in the law

This introduces a new character into the story.

what you say insults us too

Jesus's comments about the Pharisees also seemed to apply to the teachers of the Jewish laws.

Luke 11:46

Woe to you, teachers of the law!

Jesus makes it clear that he intended to condemn the actions of the teachers of the law along with the Pharisees.

you put people under burdens that are hard to carry

"you put burdens on people that are too heavy and they cannot carry them." Jesus speaks about someone giving people many rules as if the person were giving them heavy things to carry. Alternate translation: "you burden people by giving them too many rules to follow"

touch the burdens with one of your own fingers

Possible meanings are 1) "do anything at all to help people carry those burdens" or 2) "make any effort to carry those burdens yourselves."

Luke 11:47

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 11:48

So you are witnesses and you consent

Jesus is rebuking the Pharisees and teachers of the law.

They know about the murder of the prophets, but do not condemn their ancestors for killing them. Alternate

translation: "So, rather than denouncing them, you confirm and agree"

Luke 11:49

For this reason

This refers back to the previous statement that the teachers of the law burdened people with rules.

God's wisdom said

"wisdom" is treated as if it was able to speak for God.

Alternate translation: "God in his wisdom said" or "God wisely said"

I will send to them prophets and apostles

"I will send prophets and apostles to my people." God had declared beforehand that he would send prophets and apostles to the ancestors of the Jewish audience to whom Jesus was speaking.

they will persecute and kill some of them

"my people will persecute and kill some of the prophets and apostles." God had declared beforehand that the ancestors of the Jewish audience to whom Jesus was speaking would persecute and kill the prophets and apostles.

Luke 11:50

this generation will be charged for all the blood of the prophets shed since the foundation of the world

God will hold the people to whom Jesus is speaking responsible for the murder of the prophets by their ancestors. Alternate translation: "God will hold this generation responsible for the deaths of all the prophets whom people have killed since the foundation of the world" for all the blood of the prophets shed

The "blood ... shed" refers to the blood that was spilled when the prophets were killed. Alternate translation: "for all the murders of the prophets"

since the foundation of the world

The author speaks of the world as if it were a building set on a foundation. Alternate translation: "since the creation of the world" or "since God created the world"

Luke 11:51

Zechariah

This was probably the priest in the Old Testament who rebuked the people of Israel for idolatry. This was not the Father of John the Baptist.

who was killed

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the people killed"

Luke 11:52

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes responding to the Jewish teacher.

you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in

yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering

Jesus speaks about life in God's kingdom as if it were in a house that the teachers will neither enter nor allow others to enter. This means the teachers do not truly know God, and they prevent others from knowing him as well by teaching about scripture things that are not true. Alternate translation: "you have made it impossible for people to know how to live in God's kingdom; you do not want to live in it yourselves, and you keep others from knowing"

the key of knowledge

Possible meanings are 1) "the key that opens the door to knowledge," in which case "knowledge" is what is behind the door, or 2) "the key, which is the knowledge of how to open the door," in which case Jesus is not telling what is behind the door.

you do not enter in yourselves

"you yourselves do not go in to get knowledge"

Luke 11:53

General Information:

This is the end of the part of the story where Jesus eats at the Pharisee's house.

After Jesus left there

"After Jesus left the Pharisee's house"

argued with him about many things

The scribes and Pharisees did not argue in order to defend their views, but to try to trap Jesus so they could accuse him of breaking the law of God.

Luke 11:54

lying in wait to catch him in something he might say

The scribes and Pharisees hoped Jesus would say something wrong so that they could accuse him of breaking God's law. They did not want to learn from him.

lying in wait to catch him

The writer speaks of the Pharisees as if they were thieves hiding by the side of a road waiting for someone to come by whom they could overpower and rob. In this case, they were waiting for Jesus to say something for which they could accuse him. Alternate translation: "waiting and hoping to accuse him"

## Chapter 12

# Luke 12 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

"Blasphemy against the Spirit"

No one knows for sure what actions people perform or what words they say when they commit this sin. However, they probably insult the Holy Spirit and his work. Part of the Holy Spirit's work is to make people understand that they are sinners and that they need to have God forgive them. Therefore, anyone who does not try to stop sinning is probably committing blasphemy against the Spirit. (See: blasphemy and holyspirit)

## Servants

God expects his people to remember that everything in the world belongs to God. God gives his people things so they can serve him. He wants them to please him by doing what he wants them to do with everything he has given them. One day Jesus will ask his servants what they have done with everything he gave them to use. He will give a reward to those who have done what he wanted them to do, and he will punish those who have not.

## Division

Jesus knew that those who did not choose to follow him would hate those who did choose to follow him. He also knew that most people love their families more than they love anyone else. So he wanted his followers to understand that following and pleasing him had to be more important to them than having their family love them ([Luke 12:51-56](#)).

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

## Links:

[Luke 12:1 Notes](#)

### Luke 12:1

General Information:

Jesus begins to teach his disciples in front of thousands of people.

In the meantime

This is probably while the scribes and Pharisees were looking for a way to trap him. The author uses these words to mark the beginning of a new event.

when many thousands of the people ... they trampled on each other

This is background information that tells the setting of the story.

many thousands of the people

"a very great crowd"

they trampled on each other

This is probably an exaggeration to emphasize that so many people were crowded close together that they would step on each other. Alternate translation: "they were stepping on each other" or "they were stepping on one another's feet"

he began to say to his disciples first of all

"Jesus first started speaking to his disciples, and said to them"

Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy

Just as yeast spreads through a whole lump of bread dough, their hypocrisy was spreading through the whole community. Alternate translation: "Guard yourself against the hypocrisy of the Pharisees, which is like yeast" or "Be careful that you do not become hypocrites like the Pharisees. Their evil behavior influences everyone just as yeast affects a lump of dough"

### Luke 12:2

But there is

The word "But" connects this verse to the previous verse about the hypocrisy of the Pharisees.

there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed

"everything that is hidden will be shown." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will find out about everything that people do secretly"

nothing hidden that will not be known

This means the same thing as the first part of the sentence in order to emphasize its truth. It can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will learn about everything that others try to hide"

### Luke 12:3

whatever you have said in the darkness will be heard in the light

Here "darkness" is a metonym for "night" which is a metonym for "private. And "light" is a metonym for "day" which is a metonym for "public. The phrase "will be heard" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whatever you have said privately at night, people will hear it in the daylight"

spoken in the ear

whispered

in the inner rooms

"in a closed room." This refers to private speech. Alternate translation: "in privacy" or "secretly"

will be proclaimed

"will be shouted loudly." This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: "people will proclaim"

upon the housetops

Houses in Israel had flat roofs, so people could go up and stand on top of them. If readers would be distracted trying to imagine how people would get up on the house tops, this could also be translated with a more general expression, such as "from a high place so that everyone will be able to hear."

### Luke 12:4

I say to you, my friends

Jesus readdresses his disciples to mark a shift in his speech to a new topic, in this case, to speak about not being afraid.

they have no more that they can do

"they cannot cause any more harm"

### Luke 12:5

Fear the one who, after ... has authority

The phrase "the one" refers to God. This could be reworded.

Alternate translation: "Fear God who, after ... has authority"

or "Fear God, because after ... he has authority"

after he has killed

"after he kills you"

has authority to throw you into hell

This is a general statement about God's authority to judge people. It does not mean this will happen to the disciples.

Alternate translation: "has authority to throw people into hell"

### Luke 12:6

Are not five sparrows sold for two small coins?

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: "You know that five sparrows are sold for only two small coins."

sparrows

very small, seed-eating birds

not one of them is forgotten in the sight of God

This could be stated in active form and in positive form.

Alternate translation: "God never forgets any of them" or

"God indeed remembers every sparrow"

### Luke 12:7

even the hairs of your head are all numbered

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God knows even how many hairs are on your head"

Do not fear

The reason for the fear is not stated. Possible meanings are 1) "Do not be afraid of what will happen to you" or 2) "So do not be afraid of people who could hurt you."

You are more valuable than many sparrows

"You are worth more to God than many sparrows"

Luke 12:8

I say to you

Jesus readdresses his audience to mark a shift in his speech to a new topic, in this case, to speak about confession.

everyone who confesses me before men

What is confessed can be stated clearly. Alternate

translation: "whoever tells others that he is my disciple" or "anyone who acknowledges before others that he is loyal to me"

the Son of Man

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man"

Luke 12:9

he who denies me before men will be denied

"I will deny before the angels of God that I know anyone who denies me" or "I, the Son of Man will deny before the angels of God that I know anyone who denies me"

denies me

"claims that he does not know me" or "claims that he is not my disciple"

before men

where people can hear

will be denied

"will be treated as though I do not know him" or "will be treated as if he is not my disciple"

Luke 12:10

Everyone who speaks a word against the Son of Man

"Everyone who says something bad about the Son of Man"

it will be forgiven him

"he will be forgiven." This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: "God will forgive him for that"

blasphemes against the Holy Spirit

"speaks evil against the Holy Spirit"

but to him ... it will not be forgiven

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate

translation: "but he ... God will not forgive him" or "but he ... God will consider him guilty forever"

Luke 12:11

When they bring you

It is not stated who brings them into judgment.

before the synagogues

"into the synagogues to question you before the religious leaders"

rulers ... authorities

It may be necessary to combine these into one statement.

Alternate translation: "other people who have power in the country"

Luke 12:12

in that hour

"at that time" or "then"

Luke 12:13

General Information:

This is a break in Jesus's teachings. A man asks Jesus to do something and Jesus responds to him.

divide the inheritance with me

In that culture, inheritances came from the father, usually after the father had died. You may need to make explicit that the speaker's father had probably died. Alternate

translation: "share my father's property with me now that our father is dead"

Luke 12:14

Man

Possible meanings are 1) this is simply a way to address a stranger or 2) Jesus is rebuking the man. Your language might have a way of addressing people in either of these ways. Some people do not translate this word at all.

who appointed me a judge or a mediator over you?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the man. Alternate

translation: "no one appointed me a judge or mediator over you." or "I am not your judge or mediator."

you

This word refers to the man and his brother and so is plural.

Luke 12:15

He said to them

The word "them" here probably refers to the whole crowd of people. Alternate translation: "And Jesus said to the crowd"

keep yourselves from all greedy desires

"guard yourself from every form of greed." Alternate

translation: "do not allow yourself to love having things" or "do not let the urge to have more things control you"

a person's life

This is a general statement of fact. It does not refer to any specific person. Some languages have a way of expressing that.

the abundance of his possessions

"how many things he owns" or "how much wealth he has"

Luke 12:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues his teaching by telling a parable.

Then Jesus told them

Jesus was probably still speaking to the entire crowd.

yielded abundantly

"grew a very good harvest"

Luke 12:17

What will I do, because I do not have a place to store my crops?

This question reflects what the man was thinking to

himself. Alternate translation: "I do not know what to do, because I do not have any place big enough to store all my crops!"

Luke 12:18

barns

buildings where farmers store the crops they have harvested

all of my grain and other goods

"all of my grain and the other good things that I own"

Luke 12:19

I will say to my soul, "Soul, you have ... years. Rest ... merry."

"I will say to myself, 'I have ... years. Rest ... merry.'" or "I will tell myself that I have ... years, so I can rest ... merry."

many goods

"many good things" or "many possessions"

Luke 12:20

Connecting Statement:

Jesus quotes how God responds to the rich man, as he finishes telling his parable.

tonight your soul is required of you

The "soul" refers to the life of a person. Alternate translation: "you will die tonight" or "I will take your life from you tonight"

the things you have prepared, whose will they be?

"who will own what you have stored up?" or "who will have what you prepared?" God uses a question to make the man realize that he would no longer possess those things.

Alternate translation: "the things that you have prepared will belong to someone else!"

Luke 12:21

stores up treasure

"saves up valuable things"

is not rich toward God

has not used his time and possessions for the things that are important to God

Luke 12:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching his disciples in front of the crowd.

Therefore

"For that reason" or "Because of what this story teaches"

I say to you

"I want to tell you something important" or "you need to listen carefully to this"

about your body, what you will wear

"about your body and what you will wear" or "about having enough clothes to put on your body"

Luke 12:23

life is more than food

This is a general statement of value. Alternate translation: "life is more important than the food you eat"

the body is more than clothes

"your body is more important than the clothes you wear"

Luke 12:24

ravens

This refers either to 1) crows, a kind of bird that eats mostly grain, or 2) ravens, a kind of bird that eats the flesh of dead animals. Jesus's audience would have considered the ravens worthless since the Jewish people could not eat these types of birds.

storeroom ... barn

These are places where food is stored.

How much more valuable you are than the birds!

This is an exclamation, not a question. Jesus emphasizes the fact that people are much more valuable to God than birds.

Luke 12:25

Which of you by being anxious can add a cubit to his lifespan?

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: "None of you can make your life any longer by being anxious!"

add a cubit to his lifespan

This is a metaphor because a cubit is a measure of length rather than of time. The image is of a person's life stretched out as if it were a board, a rope, or some other physical object.

cubit

the length from a man's elbow to the end of his fingers

Luke 12:26

If then you are not able to do such a very little thing, why do you worry

about the rest?

Jesus uses another question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: "Since you cannot do even this small thing, you should not worry about the other things."

Luke 12:27

Think about the lilies—how they grow

"Think about how the lilies grow."

lilies

Lilies are beautiful flowers that grow wild in the fields. If your language does not have a word for lily, you can use the name of another flower like that or translate it as "flowers"

neither do they spin

The process of making thread or yarn for cloth is called "spinning." It may be helpful to make this explicit. Alternate translation: "neither do they make thread in order to make cloth" or "and they do not make yarn"

Solomon in all his glory was

"Solomon, who had great wealth, was" or "Solomon, who wore beautiful clothes, was"

Luke 12:28

If God so clothes the grass in the field, which

"If God clothes the grass in the field like that, and it" or "If God gives the grass in the field such beautiful clothing, and it." God making the grass beautiful is spoken of as if God were putting beautiful clothes on the grass. Alternate translation: "If God makes the grass in the field beautiful like this, and it"

is thrown into the oven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone throws it into a fire"

how much more will he clothe you

This is an exclamation, not a question. Jesus emphasizes that he will certainly take care of people even better than he does the grass. This could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "he will certainly clothe you even better"

Luke 12:29

Do not seek what you will eat and what you will drink

"Do not focus on what you will eat and drink" or "Do not greatly desire more to eat and drink"

Luke 12:30

all the nations of the world

Here "nations" refers to "unbelievers." Alternate translation: "all people of other nations" or "all the unbelievers in the world"

your Father

This is an important title for God.

Luke 12:31

seek his kingdom

"focus on God's kingdom" or "greatly desire God's kingdom" these things will be added to you

"these things also will be given to you." "These things" refers to food and clothing. This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will also give you these things"

Luke 12:32

little flock

Jesus is calling his disciples a flock. A flock is a group of sheep or goats that a shepherd cares for. As a shepherd

cares for his sheep, God cares for Jesus's disciples. Alternate translation: "small group" or "dear group"

your Father

This is an important title for God.

Luke 12:33

give alms

It may be helpful to state what they receive. Alternate translation: "give alms from the money you earn from the sales"

Make for yourselves purses ... treasure in the heavens

The purses and treasure in the heavens are the same thing. They both represent God's blessing in heaven.

Make for yourselves

This is the result of giving to the poor. Alternate translation: "In this way you will make for yourselves"

purses which will not wear out

"money bags that will not get holes in them"

does not run out

"does not diminish" or "does not become less"

no thief comes near

"thieves do not come near"

no moth destroys

"moths do not destroy"

moth

A "moth" is a small insect that eats holes in fabric. You may need to use a different insect, such as an ant or termite.

Luke 12:34

where your treasure is, there your heart will be also

"your heart will be focused on where you store your treasure"

your heart

Here "heart" refers to a person's thoughts.

Luke 12:35

General Information:

Jesus begins to tell a parable.

Keep your loins girded

These words are a metaphor for being ready to do hard work. People in Jesus's culture wore long flowing robes. They would tuck these robes into their belts to keep them out of the way while they worked. Alternate translation: "Always be ready to serve" or "Be dressed and ready to serve"

and your lamps lit

This is a metaphor or metonym for staying awake at night and another metaphor for always being ready to work, even when it would otherwise be time to rest. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "keep your lamps burning"

Luke 12:36

be like people waiting expectantly for their master

Jesus commands the disciples to be ready for him to return the same way servants should be ready for their master to return.

waiting expectantly

If your language has a word for one person waiting and looking for someone he expects will come soon, you may want to use it here.

returns from the marriage feast

"returns home from a marriage feast"

open the door for him

This refers to the door of the master's house. It was the responsibility of his servants to open it for him.

Luke 12:37

Blessed are

"How good it is for"

whom the master will find watching when he comes

"whose master finds them waiting for him when he returns" or "who are ready when the master returns"

he will gird himself to serve and have them sit down

Because the servants have been faithful and ready to serve their master, the master will now reward them by serving them.

he will gird himself to serve

"he will tuck in his robe to serve." If people are not familiar with robes, this can also be translated in a more general way. Alternate translation: "he will dress himself to serve"

Luke 12:38

in the second watch of the night

The second watch was between 9:00 p.m. and midnight.

Alternate translation: "late at night" or "just before midnight"

or if even in the third watch

The third watch was from midnight to 3:00 a.m. Alternate translation: "or if he comes very late at night"

Luke 12:39

had known the hour

"had known when"

he would not have let his house be broken into

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he would not have let the thief break into his house"

Luke 12:40

because the Son of Man is coming at an hour that you do not expect

The similarity between a thief (Luke 12:39) and the Son of Man is that people do not know when either one will come, so they need to be ready. Jesus is not saying that he himself is a thief.

the Son of Man is coming

Jesus is talking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am coming"

Luke 12:41

General Information:

Here there is a stop in the story as Peter asks Jesus a question about the previous parable.

Luke 12:42

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell another parable.

Who then is ... right time?

Jesus uses a question to answer Peter's question indirectly. He expected those who wanted to be faithful managers to understand that the parable was about them. Alternate translation: "I said it for everyone who is ... right time."

the faithful and wise manager

Jesus tells another parable about how servants should be faithful while they wait for their master to return.

whom his lord will set over his other servants

"whom his lord puts in charge of his other servants"

Luke 12:43

Blessed is that servant

"How good it is for that servant"

whom his lord finds doing that when he comes

"if his lord finds him doing that work when he comes back"

Luke 12:44

Truly I say to you

This expression means they should pay special attention to what he is about to say.

will set him over all his property

"will put him in charge of all his property"

Luke 12:45

that servant

This refers to the servant whose lord has put him in charge of the other servants.

says in his heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being. Alternate translation: "thinks to himself"

My lord delays his return

"My master will not return soon"

male servants and female servants

The words that are translated here as "male servants and female servants" are normally translated as "boys" and "girls." They may indicate that the servants were young or that they were dear to their master. If your language can shorten this phrase to "male and female servants," you may want to do so here.

Luke 12:46

in a day when he does not expect and in an hour that he does not know  
The words "day" and "hour" form a merism of time that refers to any time, and the words "expect" and "know" have similar meanings, so the two phrases here are parallel to emphasize that the coming of the lord will be a total surprise to the servant. However, the phrases should not be combined unless your language has no different words for "know" and "expect" or "day" and "hour." Alternate translation: "at a time when the servant is not expecting him"

cut him in pieces and appoint a place for him with the unfaithful  
Possible meanings are 1) this is an exaggeration for the master dealing out harsh punishment toward the slave, or 2) this describes the manner in which the servant will be executed and buried as punishment.

Luke 12:47

That servant, having known his lord's will and not having prepared or done according to his will, will be beaten with many blows

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "But as for the servant who knows his lord's will does not prepare or do according to it, the master will beat him with many blows"

his lord's will ... according to his will

"what his master wanted him to do ... it"

Luke 12:48

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling the parable.

But the one ... few blows

Both the servant who knows the master's will and the servant who does not know it are punished, but the words that begin with "That servant" (verse 47) show the servant who intentionally disobeyed his master was punished more severely than the other servant.

But everyone who has been given much, from them much will be required

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"They will require more of anyone who has received much" or "The master will require more of everyone he has given much to"

from the one ... much, even more will be asked

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the master will ask even more of the one ... much" or "the master will require even more of the one ... much"

the one who has been entrusted with much

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the one to whom the master has given much property to take care of" or "the one to whom the master has given much responsibility"

Luke 12:49

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples.

I came to cast fire upon the earth

"I came to throw fire on the earth" or "I came to set the earth on fire." Possible meanings are 1) Jesus has come to judge people or 2) Jesus has come to purify believers or 3) Jesus has come to cause division among people.

how I wish that it were already kindled

This exclamation emphasizes how much he wants this to happen. Alternate translation: "I wish very much that it was already lit" or "how I wish that it had already begun"

Luke 12:50

I have a baptism to be baptized with

Here "baptism" refers to what Jesus must suffer. Just as water covers a person during baptism, suffering will overwhelm Jesus. Alternate translation: "I must go through a baptism of terrible suffering" or "I must be overwhelmed by suffering as a person being baptized is covered by water"

But

The word "but" is used to show that he cannot cast the fire on the earth until after he goes through his baptism.

how I am distressed until it is completed

This exclamation emphasizes how distressed he was.

Alternate translation: "I am terribly distressed and will be so until I complete this baptism of suffering"

Luke 12:51

Do you think that I came to bring peace on the earth? No, I tell you, but rather division

Jesus asks a question to let them know that he is going to correct their wrong understanding. You may need to supply the words "I came" that are omitted in the second sentence. Alternate translation: "You think that I came to bring peace on the earth, but I tell you I did not. Instead, I came to bring division"

division

"hostility" or "discord"

Luke 12:52

there will be five in one house

It may be helpful to state that this refers to people.

Alternate translation: "there will be five people in one house"

against ... against

"will oppose ... will oppose"

Luke 12:53

against

"will oppose"

Luke 12:54

General Information:

Jesus begins to speak to the crowd.

When you see a cloud rising ... happens

This condition normally meant rain was coming in Israel.

A shower is coming

"Rain is coming" or "It is going to rain"

Luke 12:55

When a south wind is blowing

This condition normally meant hot weather was coming in Israel.

Luke 12:56

the earth and the heavens

"the earth and the sky"

how is it that you do not know how to interpret the present time?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the crowd. Jesus uses this question to convict them. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "you should know how to interpret the present time."

Luke 12:57

Why do you not judge what is right for yourselves?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the crowd. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You yourselves should discern what is right."

for yourselves

"on your own initiative"

Luke 12:58

For when you go ... prison

Jesus presents a situation here that continues through verse 59. This may be a parable to teach Jesus's hearers that they need to repent of their sins before God condemns them on the day of judgment. Alternate translation: "If when you go ... prison"

when you go

Though Jesus is talking to a crowd, the situation he is presenting is something that a person would go through alone. So in some languages the word "you" would be singular.

be reconciled with him

"be reconciled with your adversary"

the judge

This refers to the magistrate, but the term here is more specific and threatening.

does not deliver you

"does not take you"

Luke 12:59

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the situations that begins in verse 58.

the very last bit of money

"the entire amount of money that your adversary demands"

---

## Chapter 13

# Luke 13 General Notes

## Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Unknown events

The people and Jesus speak about two events that they knew about but about which no one today knows anything except what Luke has written ([Luke 13:1-5](#)). Your translation should tell only what Luke tells.

### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. A paradox occurs in this chapter: "those who are least important will be first, and those who are most important will be last" ([Luke 13:30](#)).

## Links:

[Luke 13:1 Notes](#)

---

Luke 13:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus is still speaking in front of the crowd. Some people in the crowd ask him a question and he begins to respond.

This continues the story that begins in Luke 12:1.

At that time

This phrase connects this event to the end of chapter 12, when Jesus was teaching a crowd of people.

whose blood Pilate mixed with their own sacrifices

Here "blood" refers to the death of the Galileans. They were probably killed while they were offering their sacrifices.

This could be stated explicitly as in the UDB.

whose blood Pilate mixed with their own sacrifices

Pilate probably ordered his soldiers to kill people rather than doing it himself. Alternate translation: "whom Pilate's soldiers killed as they were sacrificing animals"

Luke 13:2

Do you think that these Galileans were more sinful ... way?

"Were these Galileans more sinful ... way?" or "Does this prove that these Galileans were more sinful ... way?" Jesus uses this question to challenge the understanding of the people. He answers the question in verse 3.

Luke 13:3

No, I tell you. But if you do not repent ... same way

Jesus answers the question he asked in 13:2. Jesus explains that the Galileans who were killed were not more sinful than other Galileans.

No, I tell you

Here "I tell you" emphasizes "no." Alternate translation:

"They certainly were not more sinful" or "You are wrong to think that their suffering proves that they were more sinful"



all of you will perish in the same way  
 "all of you also will die." The phrase "in the same way" means they will experience the same result, not that they will die by the same method.

perish  
 die

Luke 13:4  
 Or those

This is Jesus's second example of people who suffered.  
 Alternate translation: "Or consider those" or "Think about those"

eighteen people  
 "18 people"

Siloam

This is the name of an area in Jerusalem.  
 do you think they were worse sinners ... Jerusalem?  
 Jesus uses this question to challenge the understanding of the people. He answers the question in 13:4. Alternate translation: "does this prove that they were more sinful ... Jerusalem?"

they were worse sinners

The crowd assumed that they died in this terrible way because they were especially sinful. This could be explicitly stated. Alternate translation: "they died because they were worse sinners"

other men

"other people." The word here is the general term for a person.

Luke 13:5  
 No, I say

Jesus answers the question he asked in 13:4. Alternate translation: "They certainly did not die because they were more sinful"

perish  
 die

Luke 13:6

General Information:  
 Jesus begins to tell the crowd a parable to explain his last statement, "But if you do not repent, all of you will also perish."  
 Someone had a fig tree planted in his vineyard  
 The owner of a vineyard had another person plant a fig tree in the vineyard.  
 vineyard  
 Possible meanings are 1) this was a garden where grapes were grown, or 2) this was a garden where fruit trees were grown. Alternate translation: "garden" or "orchard"

Luke 13:7  
 Why let it waste the ground?  
 The man uses a question to emphasize that the tree is useless and the gardener should cut it down. Alternate translation: "Do not let it waste the ground."

Luke 13:8  
 leave it alone  
 "do not do anything to the tree" or "do not cut it down"  
 put manure on it  
 "put manure in the soil." Manure is animal dung. People put it in the ground to make the soil good for plants and trees. Alternate translation: "put fertilizer on it"

Luke 13:9

Connecting Statement:  
 Jesus finishes telling his parable. This is the end of the story that began in Luke 12:1.  
 If it bears fruit next year, good  
 It may be helpful to state what will happen. Alternate translation: "If it has figs on it next year, good; we can allow it to keep growing"  
 cut it down  
 The servant was making a suggestion; he was not giving a command to the owner. Alternate translation: "tell me to cut it down" or "I will cut it down"

Luke 13:10

General Information:  
 Verses 10-11 give background information about the setting of this part of the story and about a crippled woman who is introduced into the story.

Now  
 The author uses this word to mark the beginning of a new event.  
 during the Sabbath  
 "on a Sabbath day." Some languages would say "a Sabbath" because we do not know which particular Sabbath day it was.

Luke 13:11  
 Behold, a woman was there  
 The word "behold" here alerts us to a new person in the story.  
 eighteen years  
 "18 years"  
 a spirit of weakness  
 "an evil spirit that made her weak"

Luke 13:12  
 Woman, you are freed from your weakness  
 "Woman, you are healed from your disease." This can be expressed with an active verb: Alternate translation: "Woman, I have set you free from your weakness"  
 Woman, you are freed from your weakness  
 By saying this, Jesus healed her. This can be expressed with a sentence that shows that he was causing it to happen, or by a command. Alternate translation: "Woman, I now free you from your weakness" or "Woman, be freed from your weakness"

Luke 13:13  
 He placed his hands on her  
 "He touched her"  
 she was made straight again  
 This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "she was able to stand up straight again"

Luke 13:14  
 was indignant  
 "was very angry"  
 answered and said  
 "said" or "responded"  
 be healed then  
 This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "let someone heal you during those six days"  
 on the Sabbath day  
 "on a Sabbath day." Some languages would say "a Sabbath"

because we do not know which particular Sabbath day it was.

Luke 13:15

The Lord answered him

"The Lord responded to the synagogue ruler"

Hypocrites

Jesus speaks directly to the synagogue ruler, but the plural form includes the other religious rulers also. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "You and your fellow religious leaders are hypocrites"

Does not each of you untie his ox or his donkey from the stall and lead it to drink on the Sabbath?

Jesus uses a question to get them to think about something they already knew. Alternate translation: "Every one of you unties his ox or his donkey from the stall and leads it to drink on the Sabbath."

ox ... donkey

These are animals that people care for by giving them water.

on the Sabbath

"on a Sabbath." Some languages would say "a Sabbath" because we do not know which particular Sabbath day it was.

Luke 13:16

daughter of Abraham

This is an idiom that means, "descendant of Abraham" whom Satan bound

Jesus compares people tying animals to the way Satan restricted the woman with this disease. Alternate translation: "whom Satan kept crippled by her illness" or "whom Satan bound with this disease"

eighteen long years

"18 long years." The word "long" here emphasizes that eighteen years was a very long time for the woman to suffer. Other languages may have other ways of emphasizing this.

should her bonds not be untied ... day?

Jesus uses a question to tell the synagogue rulers that they are wrong. Jesus speaks about the woman's disease as if it were ropes that bound her. This can be translated as an active statement. Alternate translation: "it is right to release her from the bonds of this illness ... day."

Luke 13:17

As he said these things

"When Jesus said these things"

the glorious things he did

"the glorious things Jesus was doing"

Luke 13:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell a parable to the people in the synagogue. What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

Jesus uses two questions to introduce what he is about to teach. Alternate translation: "I will tell you what the kingdom of God is like and what I can compare it to."

what can I compare it to?

This is basically the same as the previous question. Some languages can use both questions, and some would use only one.

Luke 13:19

It is like a mustard seed

Jesus compares the kingdom to a mustard seed. Alternate translation: "The kingdom of God is like a mustard seed" a mustard seed

A mustard seed is a very small seed that grows into a large plant. If this seed is not known, the phrase can be translated with the name of another seed like it or simply as "a small seed."

threw into his garden

"planted in his garden." People planted some kinds of seeds by throwing them so that they scattered in the garden.

a big tree

The word "big" is an exaggeration that contrasts the tree with the tiny seed. Alternate translation: "a very large shrub"

birds of heaven

"birds of the sky." Alternate translation: "birds that fly in the sky" or "birds"

Luke 13:20

To what can I compare the kingdom of God?

Jesus uses another question to introduce what he is about to teach. Alternate translation: "I will tell you another thing to which I can compare to the kingdom of God."

Luke 13:21

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking to the people in the synagogue. This is the end of this part of the story.

It is like yeast

Jesus compares the kingdom of God to yeast in bread dough. Alternate translation: "The kingdom of God is like yeast"

like yeast

Only a little bit of yeast is needed to make a lot of dough rise. This can be made clear, as it is in the UDB.

three measures of flour

This is a large amount of flour, since each measure was about 13 liters. You may need to use a term that your culture uses to measure flour. Alternate translation: "a large amount of flour"

Luke 13:22

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 13:23

are only a few people to be saved?

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will God save only a few people?"

Luke 13:24

General Information:

Jesus responds to a question by using a metaphor about entering God's kingdom.

Struggle to enter through the narrow door

"Work hard to go through the narrow doorway." Jesus is speaking about the entrance to God's kingdom as if it were a small doorway to a house. Since Jesus is talking to a group, the "you" implied in this command is plural.

the narrow door

The fact that the door is narrow implies that it is difficult to go through it. Translate it in a way to keep this restrictive meaning.

many will try to enter, but will not be able to enter

It is implied that they will not be able to enter because of the difficulty of entering. The next verse explains the difficulty.

Luke 13:25

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk about entering into God's kingdom.

Once the owner

"After the owner"

the owner of the house

This refers to the owner of the house with the narrow door in the previous verses. This is a metaphor for God as the ruler of the kingdom.

you will stand outside

Jesus was talking to a crowd. The form of "you" is plural. He is addressing them as if they will not enter through the narrow door into the kingdom.

pound the door

"hit on the door." This is an attempt to gain the owner's attention.

Luke 13:26

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 13:27

Get away from me

"Go away from me"

Luke 13:28

crying and the grinding of teeth

These actions are symbolic acts, indicating great regret and sadness. Alternate translation: "crying and grinding of teeth because of your great regret"

when you see

Jesus continues to speak to the crowd as if they will not enter into the kingdom of heaven.

but you are thrown out

"but you yourselves will have been thrown outside." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but God will have forced you outside"

Luke 13:29

from the east, west, north, and south

This means "from every direction."

be seated at a table in the kingdom of God

It was common to speak of the joy in God's kingdom as a feast. Alternate translation: "they will feast in the kingdom of God"

Luke 13:30

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk about entering into God's kingdom.

This is the end of this conversation.

will be first ... will be last

Being first represents being important or honored.

Alternate translation: "will be the most important ... will be the least important" or "God will honor ... God will shame"

Luke 13:31

Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in this part of the story. Jesus is still on his way towards Jerusalem when some Pharisees speak to him about Herod.

In that same hour

"Right at that time" or "Soon after Jesus finished speaking"

Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you

Translate this as a warning to Jesus. They were advising him to go somewhere else and be safe.

Herod wants to kill you

Herod would order people to kill Jesus. Alternate

translation: "Herod wants to send his men to kill you"

Luke 13:32

that fox

Jesus was calling Herod a fox. A fox is a small wild dog.

Possible meanings are 1) Herod was not much of a threat at all 2) Herod was deceptive.

Luke 13:33

In any case

"Nevertheless" or "However" or "Whatever happens"

it is not acceptable for a prophet to be destroyed outside of Jerusalem

The Jewish leaders claimed to serve God and that Jerusalem was their holy city, but it was in Jerusalem that their

ancestors had killed many of God's prophets, and Jesus

knew that they would kill him there also. This can be stated in positive terms. Alternate translation: "it is only in

Jerusalem that it is acceptable for prophets to be destroyed"

or "even though you think you are serving God and

Jerusalem is your holy city, you disobey God by killing his prophets, and in doing so you defile Jerusalem"

to be destroyed

"to be killed"

Luke 13:34

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes responding to the Pharisees. This is the end of this part of the story.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem

Jesus speaks as if the people of Jerusalem are there

listening to him. Jesus says this twice to show how sad he is for them.

who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you

If it would be strange to address the city, you can make it clear that Jesus was really addressing the people in the city:

"you people who kill the prophets and stone those sent to you"

those sent to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"those God has sent to you"

How often I desired

"I so often desired." This is an exclamation and not a question.

to gather your children

The people of Jerusalem are described as her "children."

Alternate translation: "to gather your people" or "to gather the people of Jerusalem"

the way a hen gathers her brood under her wings

This describes how a hen protects her young from harm by covering them with her wings.

Luke 13:35

your house is abandoned

This is a prophecy about something that would happen soon. It means that God has stopped protecting the people of Jerusalem, so enemies can attack them and drive them away. Possible meanings are 1) God will abandon them.

Alternate translation: "God will abandon you" or 2) their city will be empty. Alternate translation: "your house will be abandoned"  
you will not see me until you say

"you will not see me until the time comes when you will say" or "the next time you see me, you will say"  
the name of the Lord  
Here "name" refers to the Lord's power and authority.

## Chapter 14

# Luke 14 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Verse 3 says, "Jesus asked the experts in the Jewish law and the Pharisees, 'Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not?'"  
Many times, the Pharisees got angry with Jesus for healing on the Sabbath. In this passage, Jesus dumbfounds the Pharisees. It was normally the Pharisees who tried to trap Jesus.

## Changes of subject

Many times in this chapter Luke changes from one subject to another without marking the changes.

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Parable

Jesus told the parable in [Luke 14:15-24](#) to teach that the kingdom of God will be something that everyone can enjoy. But people will refuse to be part of it. (See: [and kingdomofgod](#))

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. A paradox occurs in this chapter: "for everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, and he who humbles himself will be exalted" ([Luke 14:11](#)).

## Links:

[Luke 14:1 Notes](#)

### Luke 14:1

#### General Information:

It is the Sabbath, and Jesus is at a Pharisee's house. Verse 1 gives background information for the event that follows.

It happened one Sabbath

This indicates a new event.

to eat bread

"to eat" or "for a meal." Bread was an important part of a meal and is used in this sentence to refer to a meal.

watching him closely

They wanted to see if they could accuse him of doing anything wrong.

### Luke 14:2

Behold, there in front of him was a man

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. English uses "There in front of him was a man"

was suffering from edema

Edema is swelling caused by water building up in parts of the body. Some languages may have a name for this condition. Alternate translation: "was suffering because parts of his body were swollen with water"

### Luke 14:3

Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not

"Does the law permit us to heal on the Sabbath, or does it forbid it"

### Luke 14:4

But they kept silent

The religious leaders refused to answer Jesus's question.

So Jesus took hold of him

"So Jesus took hold of the man who suffered from edema"

### Luke 14:5

Which of you who has a son or an ox ... will not immediately pull him out?

Jesus uses a question because he wanted them to admit that they would help their son or ox, even on the Sabbath.

Therefore, it was right for him to heal people even on the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "If one of you has a son or an ox ... you would surely pull him out immediately."

### Luke 14:6

They were not able to give an answer

They knew the answer and that Jesus was right, but they did not want to admit that he was correct. Alternate translation: "They had nothing to say"

### Luke 14:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak to the guests at the house of the Pharisee who had invited him to a meal.

those who were invited

It may be helpful to identify these people, and to state this in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom the leader of the Pharisees had invited to the meal"

the seats of honor

"the seats for honored people" or "the seats for important people"

### Luke 14:8

When you are invited by someone

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"When someone invites you"

When you ... than you

These occurrences of "you" are singular. Jesus is speaking to the group as if to each individual person.

because someone may have been invited who is more honored than you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
 "because the host may have invited a person who is more important than you are"  
 Luke 14:9  
 say to you ... your place ... you will proceed  
 These occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular. Jesus is speaking to the group as if to each individual person.  
 both of you  
 This occurrence of "you" refers to the two people who want the same seat of honor.  
 in shame  
 "you will feel ashamed and"  
 the lowest place  
 "the least important place" or "the place for the least important person"  
 Luke 14:10  
 Connecting Statement:  
 Jesus continues speaking to the people at the Pharisee's house.  
 when you are invited  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
 "when someone invites you"  
 the lowest place  
 "the seat meant for the least important person"  
 go up higher  
 "move to a seat for a more important person"  
 Then you will be honored  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
 "Then the one who invited you will honor you"  
 Luke 14:11  
 who exalts himself  
 "who tries to look important" or "who takes an important position"  
 will be humbled  
 "will be shown to be unimportant" or "will be given an unimportant position." This can be stated in active form.  
 Alternate translation: "God will humble"  
 humbles himself  
 "who chooses to look unimportant" or "who takes an unimportant position"  
 will be exalted  
 "will be shown to be important" or "will be given an important position." This can be stated in active form.  
 Alternate translation: "God will exalt"  
 Luke 14:12  
 Connecting Statement:  
 Jesus continues speaking at the Pharisee's house, but addresses his host directly.  
 the man who had invited him  
 "the Pharisee who had invited him to his house for a meal"  
 When you give  
 "you" is singular because Jesus is speaking directly to the Pharisee that invited him.  
 do not invite  
 This probably does not mean they can never invite these people. More likely it means they should invite others as well. Alternate translation: "do not only invite" or "do not always invite"  
 as they may

"because they might"  
 invite you in return  
 "invite you to their dinner or banquet"  
 you will be repaid  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "in this way they will repay you"  
 Luke 14:13  
 Connecting Statement:  
 Jesus continues speaking to the Pharisee who had invited him to his home.  
 invite the poor  
 It may be helpful to add "also" since this statement is probably not exclusive. Alternate translation: "also invite the poor"  
 Luke 14:14  
 you will be blessed  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
 "God will bless you"  
 they cannot repay you  
 "they cannot invite you to a banquet in return"  
 you will be repaid  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
 "God will repay you"  
 in the resurrection of the just  
 This refers to the final judgment. Alternate translation:  
 "when God brings the righteous people back to life"  
 Luke 14:15  
 General Information:  
 One of the men at the table speaks to Jesus and Jesus responds to him by telling a parable.  
 one of them who sat at the table  
 This introduces a new person.  
 Blessed is he  
 The man was not talking about a specific person. Alternate translation: "Blessed is anyone" or "How good it is for everyone"  
 he who will eat bread  
 The word "bread" is used to refer to the whole meal.  
 Alternate translation: "he who will eat at the meal"  
 Luke 14:16  
 But Jesus said to him  
 Jesus begins telling a parable.  
 A certain man prepared a large dinner and invited many  
 The reader should be able to infer that the man probably had his servants prepare the meal and invite the guests.  
 A certain man  
 This phrase is a way of referring to the man without giving any specific information about his identity.  
 invited many  
 "invited many people" or "invited many guests"  
 Luke 14:17  
 At the dinner hour  
 "At the time for the dinner" or "When the dinner was about to begin"  
 those who were invited  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
 "those he had invited"  
 Luke 14:18  
 General Information:

All of the people who were invited gave the servant excuses about why they could not come to the banquet.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling his parable.

to make excuses

"to say why they could not come to the dinner"

The first said to him

The reader should be able to infer that these people spoke directly to the servant whom the master had sent out

Please excuse me

"Please forgive me" or "Please accept my apology"

Luke 14:19

Another said

The reader should be able to infer that these people spoke directly to the servant whom the master had sent out

five pairs of oxen

Oxen were used in pairs to pull farming tools. Alternate

translation: "10 oxen to work in my fields"

I am going to try them out

He wanted to use the oxen and see how well they worked together pulling farm tools.

Luke 14:20

another man said

The reader should be able to infer that these people spoke directly to the servant whom the master had sent out

married a wife

Use an expression that is natural in your language. Some languages may say "gotten married" or "taken a wife."

Luke 14:21

became angry

"became angry with the people he had invited"

bring in here

"invite in here to eat the dinner"

Luke 14:22

The servant said

It may be necessary to state clearly the implied information that the servant did what the master commanded him.

Alternate translation: "After the servant went out and did that, he came back and said"

what you commanded has been done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I have done what you commanded"

Luke 14:23

the highways and hedges

This refers to roads and paths outside of the city. Alternate translation: "the main roads and paths outside of the city"

compel them to come in

"demand that they come in"

compel them

The word "them" refers to anyone the servants find.

"compel anyone you find to come in"

that my house may be filled

"so that people may fill my house"

Luke 14:24

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes his parable.

For I say to you

The word "you" is plural, so it is unclear to whom it is addressed.

those men

The word here for "men" means "male adults" and not just people in general.

who were invited

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"whom I invited"

will taste my dinner

"will enjoy the dinner I have prepared"

Luke 14:25

General Information:

Jesus begins to teach the crowds that were traveling with him.

Luke 14:26

If anyone comes to me and does not hate his own father ... he cannot be my disciple

Here, "hate" is an exaggeration for the lesser love people

are to show to people other than Jesus. Alternate

translation: "If anyone comes to me and does not love me more than he loves his father ... he cannot be my disciple"

or "Only if a person loves me more than he loves his own father ... can he be my disciple"

Luke 14:27

Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after me cannot be my disciple

This could be stated in positive form. Alternate translation:

"Only he who carries his own cross and comes after me can be my disciple" or "If anyone wants to be my disciple, he must carry his own cross and follow me"

carry his own cross

Jesus does not mean every Christian must be crucified. The

Romans often made people carry their own crosses before they crucified them as a sign of their submission to Rome.

This metaphor means they must submit to God and be willing to suffer in any way to be Jesus's disciples.

Luke 14:28

General Information:

Jesus continues to explain to the crowd that it is important to count the cost of being a disciple.

For which of you who desires to build a tower does not first sit down and count the cost to calculate if he has what he needs to complete it?

Jesus uses this question to prove that people count the cost of a project before they begin it. Alternate translation: "If a person wanted to build a tower, he would certainly first sit down and determine if he had enough money to complete it."

tower

This may have been a watchtower. "a tall building" or "a high lookout platform"

Luke 14:29

Otherwise

It may be helpful to give more information. Alternate

translation: "If he does not first count the cost"

when he has laid a foundation

"when he has built a base" or "when he has completed the first part of the building"

is not able to finish

It is understood that he was not able to finish because he did not have enough money. This could be stated. Alternate translation: "does not have enough money to be able to

finish"

Luke 14:30

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 14:31

General Information:

Jesus continues to explain to the crowd that it is important to count the cost of being a disciple.

Or

Jesus used this word to introduce another situation where people count the cost before making a decision.

what king ... will not sit down first and take advice ... men?

Jesus uses another question to teach the crowd about counting the cost. Alternate translation: "you know that a king ... would sit down first and take counsel ... men."

take advice

Possible meanings are 1) "think carefully " or 2) "listen to his advisors."

ten thousand ... twenty thousand

"10,000 ... 20,000"

Luke 14:32

If not

It may be helpful to restate the information given in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "If he realizes that he will not be able to defeat the other king"

conditions of peace

"terms to end the war" or "what the other king wants him to do in order to end the war"

Luke 14:33

any one of you who does not give up all his possessions cannot be my disciple

This can be stated with positive verbs. Alternate translation: "only those of you who give up all your

possessions can be my disciples"

give up all his possessions

"leave behind all that he has"

Luke 14:34

Salt is good

"Salt is useful." Jesus is teaching a lesson about those who want to be his disciple.

how can it be made salty again?

Jesus uses a question to teach the crowd. Alternate translation: "it cannot be made salty again." or "no one can make it salty again."

Luke 14:35

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching the crowd.

manure pile

People use manure to fertilize gardens and fields. Salt without taste is so useless it is not even worth mixing with manure. Alternate translation: "compost heap" or "fertilizer"

It is thrown away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"Someone just throws it away"

He who has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "ears to hear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated this phrase in [Luke 8:8]

He who ... let him

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated this phrase in [Luke 8:8]

---

## Chapter 15

# Luke 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The parable of the prodigal son

[Luke 15:11-32]

Special concepts in this chapter

Sinners

When the people of Jesus's time spoke of "sinners," they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. But Jesus told three parables

Links:

[Luke 15:1 Notes](#)

---

Luke 15:1

General Information:

We do not know where this takes place; it simply occurs one day when Jesus is teaching.

Now

This marks the beginning of a new event.

all the tax collectors

This is an exaggeration to stress that there were very many of them. Alternate translation: "many tax collectors"

Luke 15:2

This man welcomes sinners

"This man lets sinners into his presence" or "This man associates with sinners"

This man

They were talking about Jesus.

even eats with them

The word "even" shows that they thought it was bad enough that Jesus allowed sinners to come to him, but it was worse that he would eat with them.

Luke 15:3

General Information:

Jesus begins to tell several parables. These parables are

situations about things that anyone could experience. They are not about particular people. The first parable is about what a person would do if one of his sheep was lost.

to them

Here "them" refers to the religious leaders.

Luke 15:4

Which one of you ... will not leave ... until he finds it?

Jesus uses a question to remind the people that if any of them lost one of their sheep, they would certainly go looking for it. Alternate translation: "Each of you ... would certainly leave ... until he finds it."

Which one of you, if he has a hundred sheep ... loses ... he finds it

Since the parable starts with "Which one of you," some languages would continue the parable in the second person. Alternate translation: "Which one of you, if you have a hundred sheep ... lose ... you find it"

hundred ... ninety-nine

"100 ... 99"

Luke 15:5

Then when he has found it, he lays ... rejoices

Since the parable starts in the previous verse with "Which one of you," some languages would continue the parable in the second person. Alternate translation: "Then when you have found it you will lay ... rejoice"

lays it across his shoulders

This is the way a shepherd carries a sheep. This could be stated. Alternate translation: "lays it across his shoulders to carry it home"

Luke 15:6

When he comes to the house, he calls together his friends and his neighbors

Since the parable starts in the verse 4 with "Which one of you," some languages would continue the parable in the second person. Alternate translation: "When you come home you will call together your friends and your neighbors"

When he comes to the house

"When the owner of the sheep comes home" or "When you come home." Refer to the owner of the sheep as you did in the previous verse.

Luke 15:7

even so

"in the same way" or "as the shepherd and his friends and neighbors would rejoice"

there will be joy in heaven

"everyone in heaven will rejoice"

ninety-nine righteous persons who do not need to repent

Jesus uses sarcasm to say that the Pharisees were wrong to think that they did not need to repent. Your language may have a different way to express this idea. Alternate translation: "ninety-nine persons like you, who think they are righteous and do not need to repent"

ninety-nine

"99"

Luke 15:8

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins telling another parable. It is about a woman with 10 silver coins.

Or what woman ... would not light a lamp ... and seek diligently until

she has found it?

Jesus uses a question to remind the people that if they lost a silver coin, they would certainly look for it diligently.

Alternate translation: "Any woman ... would certainly light a lamp ... and seek diligently until she has found it."

Luke 15:9

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 15:10

Even so

"In the same way" or "Just as people would rejoice with the woman"

over one sinner who repents

"when one sinner repents"

Luke 15:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins telling another parable. It is about a young man who asks his father for his part of the inheritance.

A certain man

This introduces a new character in the parable. Some languages might say "There was a man who"

Luke 15:12

give me

The son wanted his father to give it to him immediately.

Languages that have a command form that means that they want it done immediately should use that form.

the portion of the wealth that falls to me

"the part of your wealth that you plan for me to receive when you die"

between them

"between his two sons"

Luke 15:13

gathered together all he owned

"packed his things" or "put his things in his bag"

living recklessly

"living without thinking about the consequences of his actions" or "living wildly"

Luke 15:14

Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story.

Here Jesus explains how the younger son went from having plenty to being in need.

a severe famine spread through that country

"a drought occurred there and the entire country did not have enough food"

to be in need

"to lack what he needed" or "to not have enough"

Luke 15:15

He went

The word "he" refers to the younger son.

hired himself out to

"took a job with" or "began to work for"

one of the citizens of that country

"a man of that country"

to feed pigs

"to give food to the man's pigs"

Luke 15:16

was longing to eat

"wished very much that he could eat." It is understood that



this is because he was very hungry. This could be stated.  
Alternate translation: "he was so hungry that he would have happily eaten"

carob pods

These are the husks of beans that grow on the carob tree.

Alternate translation: "carob bean pods" or "bean husks"

Luke 15:17

came to himself

This idiom means he realized what the truth was, that he had made a terrible mistake. Alternate translation: "clearly understood his situation"

How many of my father's hired servants have more than enough bread

This is part of an exclamation, and not a question. Alternate translation: "All my father's hired servants have more than enough bread to eat"

bread

This is a synecdoche for any kind and all kinds of food.

Alternate translation: "food"

perishing from hunger

This is probably not an exaggeration. Jesus may have meant that the young man in his parable was actually starving then.

perishing

"dying" or "being destroyed"

Luke 15:18

I will get up

This is an idiom that means he will begin to act. It does not mean that he was sitting or lying down when he said these words.

I have sinned against heaven

Jewish people sometimes avoided saying the word "God" and used the word "heaven" instead. Alternate translation: "I have sinned against God"

Luke 15:19

I am no longer worthy to be called your son

"I was once worthy to be called your son, but not now." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You called me son in the past, but now I am not worthy for you to call me son"

make me as one of your hired servants

"hire me as an employee" or "hire me and I will become one of your servants." This is a request, not a command. It may be helpful to add "please" as the UDB does.

Luke 15:20

So the young son got up and left and came toward his father

"So he left that country and started going back to his father." The word "so" marks an event that happened because of something else that happened first. In this case, the young man was in need and had decided to go home.

got up

This is an idiom that means he began to act. It does not mean that he had been sitting or lying down. See how you translated similar words in [Luke 15:18]

While he was still far away

"While he was still far away from his home" or "While he was still far away from his father's house"

was moved with compassion

"had pity on him" or "loved him deeply from his heart"

embraced him and kissed him

The father did this to show his son that he loved him and was glad that the son was coming home. If people think that it is strange or wrong for a man to embrace or hug and kiss his son, you can substitute a way that men in your culture show affection to their sons. Alternate translation: "welcomed him affectionately"

Luke 15:21

sinned against heaven

Jewish people sometimes avoided saying the word "God" and used the word "heaven" instead. See how you translated this in [Luke 15:18]

I am no longer worthy to be called your son

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Luke 15:18]

Luke 15:22

best robe

"the best robe in the house." Alternate translation: "the best coat" or "the best garment"

put a ring on his hand

A ring was a sign of authority that men wore on one of their fingers.

sandals

Wealthy people of that time wore sandals. However, in many cultures the modern equivalent would be "shoes."

Luke 15:23

fattened calf

A calf is a young cow. People would give one of their calves special food so that it would grow well, and then when they wanted to have a special feast, they would eat that calf.

Alternate translation: "the best calf" or "the young animal we have been making fat"

kill it

The implied information that they were to cook the meat can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "kill it and cook it"

Luke 15:24

my son was dead, and now he is alive

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he were dead. Alternate translation: "it is as if my son were dead and became alive again" or "I felt like my son had died, but he is now alive"

He was lost, and now he is found

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he had been lost. Alternate translation: "It is as if I had lost my son and now I have found him" or "My son went to where I could not bring him back, but now he has returned home"

Luke 15:25

Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Jesus starts to tell about the older son in a new part of the story.

out in the field

It is implied that he was out in the field because he was working there.

Luke 15:26

one of the servants

The word that is translated here as "servant" is normally translated as "boy." It may indicate that the servant was very young.

what these things might be

"what was happening"

Luke 15:27

the fattened calf

A calf is a young cow. People would give one of their calves special food so that it would grow well, and then when they wanted to have a special feast, they would eat that calf. See how you translated this phrase in [Luke 15:23]

he has received him in good health

"your father has received your brother, and your brother is healthy" or "your brother is well and has returned to your father"

Luke 15:28

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 15:29

these many years

"for many years"

I slaved for you

"I worked extremely hard for you" or "I worked as hard as a slave for you"

never neglected a command of yours

"never disobeyed any of your commands" or "always obeyed everything you told me to do"

a young goat

A young goat was smaller and less expensive than a fattened calf. Alternate translation: "even a young goat"

Luke 15:30

your son

"that son of yours." The older son refers to his brother this way in order to show how angry he is.

devoured your living

Food is a metaphor for money. After one eats food, the food

is no longer there and there is nothing to eat. The money that the brother had received was no longer there and there was no more to spend. Alternate translation: "wasted all your wealth" or "thrown away all your money"

with prostitutes

Possible meanings are 1) he assumed this is how his brother spent the money or 2) he speaks of prostitutes to exaggerate the sinfulness of his brother's actions in the "country far away"

fattened calf

A calf is a young cow. People would give one of their calves special food so that it would grow well, and then when they wanted to have a special feast, they would eat that calf. See how you translated this phrase in [Luke 15:23]

Luke 15:31

The father said to him

The word "him" refers to the older son.

Child

"My dear child" or "My dear son." The father was addressing his son tenderly.

Luke 15:32

this brother of yours

The father was reminding the older son that the one who just came home was his brother.

this brother of yours was dead, and is now alive

This metaphor speaks of the brother being gone as if he were dead. See how you translated this phrase in [Luke 15:24]

he was lost, and has now been found

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he had been lost. See how you translated this phrase in [Luke 15:24]

---

## Chapter 16

# Luke 16 General Notes

## Links:

[Luke 16:1 Notes](#)

---

Luke 16:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins telling another parable. It is about a master and the manager of his debtors. This is still the same part of the story and the same day that began in [Luke 15:3]

Jesus also said to the disciples

The last section was directed at Pharisees and scribes, though Jesus's disciples may have been part of the crowd listening.

There was a certain rich man

This introduces a new character in the parable.

it was reported to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"people reported to the rich man"

wasting his possessions

"foolishly managing the rich man's wealth"

Luke 16:2

What is this that I hear about you?

The rich man uses a question to scold the manager.

Alternate translation: "I have heard what you are doing."

Give an account of your management

"Set your records in order to pass on to someone else" or "Prepare the records you have written about my money"

Luke 16:3

What should I do ... job?

The manager asks this question of himself, as a means of reviewing his options. Alternate translation: "I need to think about what I should do ... job."

my master

This refers to the wealthy man. The manager was not a slave. Alternate translation: "my employer"

I do not have strength to dig

"I am not strong enough to dig the ground" or "I am not able to dig"

Luke 16:4

when I am removed from my management job

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when I lose my management job" or "when my master takes away my management job"

people will welcome me into their houses

This implies that those people will provide a job, or other things that he needs to live.

Luke 16:5

his master's debtors

"the people who were in debt to his master" or "the people who owed things to his master." In this story the debtors owed olive oil and wheat.

Luke 16:6

He said ... He said to him

"The debtor said ... The manager said to the debtor"

A hundred baths of olive oil ... fifty

A bath is about 22 liters. Alternate translation: "I owe 2,200 liters of olive oil ... 1,100 liters"

hundred ... fifty

"100 ... 50"

Take your bill

A "bill" is a piece of paper that tells how much someone owes.

Luke 16:7

the manager said to another ... He said ... He said to him

"the manager said to another debtor ... The debtor said ... The manager said to the debtor"

A hundred cors of wheat

A cor is about 220 liters. You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: "I owe 22,000 liters of wheat" or "I owe one hundred large baskets of wheat"

write eighty

"write eighty cors of wheat." You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: "write 17,600 liters of wheat" or "write eighty large baskets of wheat"

eighty

"80"

Luke 16:8

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling the parable about the master and the manager of his debtors. In verse 9, Jesus continues to teach his disciples.

The master then commended

The text does not say how the master learned of the manager's action.

commended

"praised" or "spoke well of" or "approved of"

he had acted shrewdly

"he had acted cleverly" or "he had done a sensible thing"

the sons of this world

This refers to those who, like the unrighteous manager, do not know or care about God. Alternate translation: "the people of this world" or "worldly people"

the sons of light

Here "light" is a metaphor for everything godly. Alternate translation: "the people of God" or "godly people"

Luke 16:9

I say to you

"I" refers to Jesus. The phrase "I say to you" marks the end of the story and now Jesus tells the people how to apply the

story to their lives.

make friends for yourselves by means of unrighteous wealth

The focus here is on using the money to help other people.

Alternate translation: "make people your friends by helping them with worldly wealth"

by means of unrighteous wealth

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus uses hyperbole when he calls money "unrighteous" because it has no eternal value. Alternate translation: "by using money, which has no eternal value" or "by using worldly money" or 2) Jesus uses metonymy when he calls money "unrighteous" because people sometimes earn it or use it in unrighteous ways.

Alternate translation: "by using even money that you earned dishonestly"

they may welcome

Possible meanings are 1) "the friends you helped with your money may welcome" or 2) "God and his angels may welcome"

eternal dwellings

This refers to heaven, where God lives.

Luke 16:10

He who is faithful ... is also faithful ... he who is unrighteous ... is also unrighteous

"People who are faithful ... are also faithful ... people who are unrighteous ... are also unrighteous." This would include women.

faithful in very little

"faithful even with small things." Make sure this does not sound like they are not very faithful.

unrighteous in very little

"unrighteous even in small things." Make sure this does not sound like they are not often unrighteous.

Luke 16:11

unrighteous wealth

See how you translated this in [Luke 16:9]

who will trust you with true wealth?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "no one will trust you with true wealth." or "no one will give you true wealth to manage."

true wealth

This refers to wealth that is more genuine, real, or lasting than money.

Luke 16:12

who will give you money of your own?

Jesus uses this question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "no one will give you wealth for yourself."

Luke 16:13

No servant can

"A servant cannot"

serve two masters

It is implied that he cannot "serve two different masters at the same time"

for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will be devoted to one and despise the other

These two clauses are essentially the same. The only significant difference is that the first master is hated in the first case, but the second master is hated in the second case.

he will hate

"the servant will hate"

be devoted to one  
 "love one very strongly"  
 despise the other  
 "hold the other in contempt" or "hate the other"  
 despise  
 This means essentially the same as "hate" in the previous clause.  
 You cannot serve  
 Jesus was talking to a group of people, so languages that have a plural form of "you" would use that.  
 Luke 16:14  
 General Information:  
 This is a break in Jesus teachings, as verse 14 tells us background information about how the Pharisees ridiculed Jesus. In verse 15, Jesus continues teaching and responds to the Pharisees.  
 Now  
 This word marks a shift to the background information.  
 who were lovers of money  
 "who loved having money" or "who where very greedy for money"  
 they ridiculed him  
 "the Pharisees ridiculed Jesus"  
 Luke 16:15  
 He said to them  
 "And Jesus said to the Pharisees"  
 You justify yourselves in the sight of men  
 "You make yourselves look good to other people"  
 God knows your hearts  
 Here "hearts" refers to the desires of people. Alternate translation: "God understands your true desires" or "God knows your motives"  
 That which is exalted among men is detestable in the sight of God  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Those things that men think are very important are things that God hates"  
 Luke 16:16  
 The law and the prophets  
 This refers to all of God's word that had been written up to that time.  
 were in effect  
 "had authority" or "were what people needed to obey"  
 John came  
 This refers to John the Baptist. Alternate translation: "John the Baptist came"  
 the gospel of the kingdom of God is preached  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am teaching people about the good news of the kingdom of God"  
 everyone tries to force their way into it  
 This refers to the people who were listening to and accepting the teaching of Jesus. Alternate translation: "many people are doing everything they can to enter it"  
 Luke 16:17  
 it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one stroke of a letter of the law to become invalid  
 This contrast could be stated in the reverse order. Alternate translation: "even the smallest stroke of the letter of the law will last longer than heaven and earth will exist"

than for one stroke of a letter  
 A "stroke" is the smallest part of a letter. It refers to something in the law that may seem to be insignificant. Alternate translation: "than for even the smallest detail of the law"  
 become invalid  
 "disappear" or "cease to exist"  
 Luke 16:18  
 Everyone who divorces his wife  
 "Anyone who divorces his wife" or "Any man who divorces his wife"  
 commits adultery  
 "is guilty of adultery"  
 he who marries one  
 "any man who marries a woman"  
 Luke 16:19  
 General Information:  
 These verses give background information about the story Jesus begins to tell about the rich man and Lazarus.  
 Connecting Statement:  
 As Jesus continues teaching the people he begins to tell a story. It is about a rich man and Lazarus.  
 Now  
 This marks a shift in Jesus's speech as he begins to tell a story that will help people understand what he was teaching them.  
 a certain rich man  
 This phrase introduces a person in Jesus's story. It is not clear if this is a real person or if it is simply a person in a story that Jesus tells in order to make a point.  
 who was clothed in purple and fine linen  
 "who wore clothing made with fine linen and purple dye" or "who wore very expensive clothes." Purple dye and fine linen cloth were very expensive.  
 was enjoying every day his great wealth  
 "enjoyed eating expensive food every day" or "continued to spend much money, buying whatever he desired"  
 Luke 16:20  
 A certain beggar named Lazarus was laid at his gate  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People had laid a certain beggar named Lazarus at his gate"  
 A certain beggar named Lazarus  
 This phrase introduces another person in Jesus's story. It is not clear if this is a real person or simply a person in a story that Jesus tells in order to make a point.  
 at his gate  
 "at the gate to the rich man's house" or "at the entrance to the rich man's property"  
 covered with sores  
 "with sores all over his body"  
 Luke 16:21  
 longing to eat what fell  
 "wishing he could eat the scraps of food that fell"  
 Even the dogs came  
 The word "Even" here shows that what follows is worse than what has already been told about Lazarus. Alternate translation: "In addition to that, the dogs came" or "Worse yet, the dogs came"

dogs

The Jews considered dogs to be unclean animals. Lazarus was too sick and weak to stop the dogs from licking his wounds.

Luke 16:22

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

was carried away by the angels

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the angels carried him away"

to Abraham's side

This implies that Abraham and Lazarus were reclining next to each other at a feast, which was a customary style of feasting. The joy in heaven is often represented in the scriptures by the idea of a feast.

was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people buried him"

Luke 16:23

at his side

This implies that Abraham and Lazarus were reclining next to each other at a feast, which was the customary style of feasting. The joy in heaven is often represented in the scriptures by the idea of a feast.

in Hades, being in torment

"he went to Hades, where, suffering in terrible pain"

he lifted up his eyes

This idiom means "he looked up"

Luke 16:24

he cried out and said

"the rich man called out to say" or "he shouted out to Abraham"

Father Abraham

Abraham was the ancestor of all the Jews, including the rich man.

have mercy on me

"please have pity on me" or "please be merciful to me"

and send Lazarus

"by sending Lazarus" or "and tell Lazarus to come to me"

he may dip the tip of his finger

This indicates the smallness of the amount requested.

Alternate translation: "he may wet the tip of his finger"

I am in anguish in this flame

"I am in terrible pain in this flame" or "I am suffering terribly in this fire"

Luke 16:25

Child

The rich man was one of Abraham's descendants.

good things

"fine things" or "pleasant things"

in like manner evil things

"in like manner received evil things" or "in like manner received things that caused him to suffer"

in like manner

This refers the fact that they both received something while they lived on earth. It is not saying that what they received was the same. Alternate translation: "while he was living

received"

he is comforted here

"he is comfortable here" or "he is happy here"

in agony

"suffering"

Luke 16:26

Besides all this

"In addition to this reason"

a great chasm has been put in place

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God has placed a huge ravine between you and us"

a great chasm

"a steep, deep and wide valley" or "a big separation" or "a huge ravine"

those who want to cross over ... cannot

"those people who want to cross over the chasm ... cannot" or "if anyone wants to cross over ... he cannot"

Luke 16:27

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 16:28

in order that he may warn them

"so that Lazarus may warn them"

this place of torment

"this place where we suffer torment" or "this place where we suffer terrible pain"

Luke 16:29

They have Moses and the prophets

It is implied that Abraham refused to send Lazarus to the rich man's brothers. This could be stated. Alternate translation: "No, I will not do that, because your brothers have what Moses and the prophets wrote long ago"

Moses and the prophets

This refers to their writings. Alternate translation: "what Moses and the prophets wrote"

let them listen to them

"your brothers should pay attention to Moses and the prophets"

Luke 16:30

if someone would go to them from the dead

The rich man would like this to happen. Alternate

translation: "if a person who has died would go to them" or "if someone who has died would go and warn them"

from the dead

The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. Alternate translation: "from among all those who have died"

Luke 16:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling the story about the rich man and Lazarus.

If they do not listen to Moses and the prophets

Here "Moses and the prophets" represent the things that they wrote. Alternate translation: "If they do not pay attention to what Moses and the prophets wrote"

neither will they be persuaded if someone rises from the dead

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "neither will a person who comes back from the dead be able to convince them" or "they will not believe even if a

person comes back from the dead"  
rises from the dead  
The words "the dead" speak of all dead people together in

the underworld. To rise from among them is to become  
alive again.

---

## Chapter 17

# Luke 17 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Old Testament Examples

Jesus used the lives of Noah and of Lot to teach his followers. Noah was ready for the flood when it came, and they needed to be ready for him to return, because he would not warn them when he came. Lot's wife loved the evil city she had been living in so much that God also punished her when he destroyed it, and they needed to love Jesus more than anything else,

Those who read your translation may need help so they can understand what Jesus was teaching here.

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Rhetorical Questions

Jesus asked his disciples three questions ([Luke 17:7-9](#)) to teach them that even those who serve him well are righteous only because of his grace. (See: [and grace and righteous](#))

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. A paradox occurs in this chapter: "Whoever seeks to gain his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life will save it" ([Luke 17:33](#)).

## Links:

[Luke 17:1 Notes](#)

---

### Luke 17:1

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching, but he directs his attention back to his disciples. This is still the same part of the story and the same day that began in Luke 15:3.

It is certain there will be stumbling blocks

"Things that tempt people to sin will certainly happen"

to that person through whom they come

"to anyone who causes the temptations to come" or "to any person who causes people to be tempted"

### Luke 17:2

It would be better for him if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea than that he should cause one of these little ones to stumble

You may need to make explicit that Jesus is comparing the punishment for causing people to sin to being thrown into the sea. Alternate translation: "It would be better for him if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea than that he should suffer the more severe punishment for causing one of these little ones to stumble" or "He would suffer less if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea than if he should cause one of these little ones to stumble"

if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea

This was a terrible punishment. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea" or "if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and push him into the sea"

for him ... his neck ... he were ... he should

The words "him," "his," and "he" refer to "that person" through whom things that cause people to sin come.

a millstone

This is a very large, heavy circular stone used for grinding wheat grain into flour. Alternate translation: "a heavy stone"

these little ones

This here refers to people whose faith is still weak.

Alternate translation: "these people whose faith is small" to stumble

This was a way of referring to unintentional sin. Alternate translation: "to sin"

### Luke 17:3

If your brother sins

This is a conditional statement that talks about an event that will probably happen in the future.

your brother

"brother" is here used in the sense of someone with the same belief. Alternate translation: "a fellow believer"

rebuke him

"tell him strongly that what he did was wrong" or "correct him"

### Luke 17:4

seven times in the day, and seven times

The number seven in the Bible is a symbol for completeness. Alternate translation: "many times in a day, and each time"

### Luke 17:5

General Information:

There is a brief break in Jesus's teachings as the disciples speak to him. Then Jesus continues teaching.

Increase our faith

"Please give us more faith" or "Please add more faith to our faith"

Luke 17:6

If you had faith like a mustard seed, you

A mustard seed is a very small seed. Jesus implies that they do not have even a small amount of faith. Alternate translation: "If you had faith that was even as small as a mustard seed, you" or "Your faith is not as big as a mustard seed—but if it were, you"

mulberry tree

If this type of tree is not familiar, it may be helpful to substitute another type of tree. Alternate translation: "fig tree" or "tree"

Be uprooted, and be planted in the sea

These can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"Uproot yourself and plant yourself in the sea" or "Take your roots out of the ground, and put your roots down into the ocean"

it would obey you

"the tree would obey you." This result is conditional. It would happen only if they had faith.

Luke 17:7

But which of you, who ... sheep, will say ... sit down to eat?"

Jesus asks his disciples a question to help them think about the role of a servant. This could be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "But none of you who ... sheep would say ... sit down to eat."

a servant plowing or keeping sheep

"a servant that plows your field or takes care of your sheep"

Luke 17:8

Will he not say to him ... eat and drink?"

Jesus uses a second question explain how the disciples would actually treat a servant. This can be a statement.

Alternate translation: "He would certainly say to him ... eat and drink"

put a belt around your clothes and serve me

"tie your clothes at your waist and serve me" or "dress up properly and take care of me." People would tie their clothes closely around their waist so that their clothes would not get in their way while they worked.

Then afterward

"Then after you serve me"

Luke 17:9

He does not thank the servant ... commanded, does he?

Jesus uses this question to show how people treat servants. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "He would not thank the servant ... commanded."

the things that were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things you commanded him to do"

does he?

"right?" or "is this not true?"

Luke 17:10

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching. This is the end of this part of the story.

you also

Jesus was speaking to his disciples, so languages that have a plural form of "you" would use it.

that you are commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God has commanded you"

We are unworthy servants

This is an exaggeration to express that they did not do anything worthy of praise. Alternate translation: "We are ordinary slaves" or "We servants do not deserve your praise"

Luke 17:11

General Information:

This begins the story of Jesus healing 10 men of leprosy.

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

as he traveled to Jerusalem

"as Jesus and the disciples were traveling to Jerusalem"

Luke 17:12

General Information:

This is the beginning of the background information and the setting of the story of Jesus healing the ten lepers.

a certain village

This phrase does not identify the village.

there he was met by ten men who were lepers

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "ten men who were lepers met him" or "ten men who had leprosy met him"

They stood far away from him

This was a respectful gesture, because lepers were not allowed to approach other people.

Luke 17:13

General Information:

This is the end of the background information and the setting of the story of Jesus healing the ten lepers.

they lifted up their voices

The idiom "to lift up one's voice" means to speak loudly.

Alternate translation: "they called with loud voices" or "they called aloud"

have mercy on us

They were specifically asking to be healed. Alternate translation: "please show us mercy by healing us"

Luke 17:14

show yourselves to the priests

Lepers were required to have the priests verify that their leprosy was healed. Alternate translation: "show yourselves to the priests so they can examine you"

they were cleansed

When people were healed, they were no longer ceremonially unclean. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "they were healed of their leprosy and so became clean" or "they were cured of their leprosy"

Luke 17:15

saw that he was healed

"realized that he was healed" or "realized that Jesus had healed him"

he turned back

"he went back to Jesus"

with a loud voice glorifying God

"and glorified God loudly"

Luke 17:16

He fell on his face at Jesus' feet

"he knelt down and put his face close to Jesus' feet." He did this to honor Jesus.

Now he was a Samaritan

The word "now" is used to mark a break in the main story. Here Luke tells background information about the man who returned to Jesus.

Luke 17:17

Then Jesus said

Jesus responded to what the man did, but he was speaking to the group of people around him. Alternate translation:

"So Jesus said to the crowd"

Were not the ten cleansed?

This is the first of three rhetorical questions. Jesus used them to show the people around him how surprised and disappointed he was that only one of the ten men came back to glorify God. Alternate translation: "Ten men were healed." or "God healed ten men."

Where are the nine?

"Why did not the other nine come back?" This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "The other nine men should have come back, too."

Luke 17:18

Were there no others who returned to give glory to God, except this foreigner?

This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "There were no others who returned to give glory to God, except this foreigner!" or "God healed ten men, yet only this foreigner came back to give glory to God!"

this foreigner

Samaritans had non-Jewish ancestors and they did not worship God in the same way that the Jews did.

Luke 17:19

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Jesus healing the 10 lepers.

Your faith has made you well

"Because of your faith you have become well." The idea of "faith" can be expressed with the verb "believe." Alternate translation: "Because you believe, you are well again"

Luke 17:20

General Information:

We do not know where this event takes place; it simply happens one day when Jesus is talking with the Pharisees. Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, This is the beginning of a new event. Some translations start it with "One day" or "Once." It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "One day the Pharisees asked Jesus, 'When will the kingdom of God come?'"

The kingdom of God does not come with careful observing

People thought that they would be able to see signs of the kingdom coming. The idea of signs can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "The kingdom of God does not come with signs that people can observe"

Luke 17:21

the kingdom of God is within you

The idea of the noun "kingdom" can be expressed with the verb "rules." Alternate translation: "God rules within you"

the kingdom of God is within you

Jesus was speaking to the religious leaders who were hostile to him. Possible meanings are 1) the word "you" refers to people in general. Alternate translation: "the kingdom of God is within people" or 2) the word translated "within" means "among." Alternate translation: "the kingdom of God is among you"

Luke 17:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach his disciples.

The days are coming when

The idea of days days coming represents something being soon. Alternate translation: "A time is coming when" or "Soon"

you will desire to see

"you will want very much to see" or "you will wish to experience"

one of the days of the Son of Man

This refers to the kingdom of God. Alternate translation:

"one of the days when the Son of Man will rule as king"

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

but you will not see it

"you will not experience it"

Luke 17:23

Look, there! Look, here!

This refers to seeking the Messiah. Alternate translation:

"Look, the Messiah is over there! He is over here!"

do not go out or run after them

The purpose of going out can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "do not go with them to look"

Luke 17:24

as the lightning shines brightly ... so will the Son of Man be

When lightning flashes, people can see it clearly. This is a metaphor for the way the Son of Man will appear: when he does, everyone will see him clearly. Alternate translation: "as the people can see lightning clearly when it flashes ... so they will clearly see the Son of Man"

so will the Son of Man be in his day

This refers to the future kingdom of God. Alternate translation: "it will be like that on the day when the Son of Man comes to reign"

so will the Son of Man be

Jesus speaks of himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "so will I, the Son of Man, be"

Luke 17:25

But first he must suffer

"But first the Son of Man must suffer." Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

be rejected by this generation

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people of this generation must reject him"

Luke 17:26

As it happened ... even so will it also happen

"As people were doing things ... even so people will be doing the same things"



in the days of Noah

The "days of Noah" refers to the time during Noah's life just before God punished the people of the world. Alternate translation: "when Noah was living"

in the days of the Son of Man

The "days of the Son of Man" refers to the period just before the Son of Man will come. Alternate translation: "when the Son of Man is about to come"

Luke 17:27

They ate, they drank, they married, and they were given in marriage. People were doing ordinary things. They did not know or care that God was about to judge them.

they were given in marriage

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "parents were allowing their daughters to marry men"

the ark

"the ship" or "the barge"

destroyed them all

This does not include Noah and his family who were in the ark. Alternate translation: "destroyed all those who were not in the boat"

Luke 17:28

they were eating and drinking

"the people of Sodom were eating and drinking"

Luke 17:29

it rained fire and sulfur from heaven

"fire and burning sulfur fell from the sky like rain"

destroyed them all

This does not include Lot and his family. Alternate translation: "destroyed all those who stayed in the city"

Luke 17:30

After the same manner it will be

"It will be like that." Alternate translation: "In the same way people will not be ready"

in the day that the Son of Man is revealed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"when the Son of Man appears" or "when the Son of man comes"

the Son of Man is revealed

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am revealed"

Luke 17:31

let him who is on the housetop not go down

"whoever is on the housetop must not go down" or "if anyone is on his housetop, he must not go down." This is a statement of what people should not do, not a command to the hearers.

on the housetop

Their housetops were flat and people could walk or sit on them.

his goods

"his possessions" or "his things"

return

They are not to go back to the house to get anything. They are to flee quickly.

Luke 17:32

Remember Lot's wife

"Remember what happened to Lot's wife" This is a warning. She looked back toward Sodom and God punished her along with the people of Sodom. Alternate translation: "Do not do what Lot's wife did"

Luke 17:33

Whoever seeks to gain his life will lose it

"People who try save their lives will lose them" or

"Whoever tries to save his old way of life will lose his life"

but whoever loses his life will save it

"but people who lose their lives will save them" or "but whoever abandons his old way of life will save his life"

Luke 17:34

I tell you

As Jesus continues to address his disciples, he emphasizes the importance of what he is telling them.

in that night

This refers to what will happen if he, the Son of Man, comes during the night.

there will be two people in one bed

The emphasis is not on these two people, but on the fact that some people will be taken away and the others will be left.

bed

"couch" or "cot"

One will be taken, and the other will be left

"One person will be taken and the other person will be left behind." This can be stated in active form. Alternate

translation: "God will take one person and leave the other" or "Angels will take one and leave behind the other"

Luke 17:35

There will be two women grinding grain together

The emphasis is not on these two women or their activity, but on the fact that some people will be taken away and the others will be left.

grinding grain together

"grinding grain together"

Luke 17:36

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 17:37

General Information:

The disciples ask Jesus a question about his teaching and he answers them.

Where, Lord?

"Lord, where will this happen?"

Where there is a body, there will the vultures also be gathered together

Apparently this is a proverb that means "It will be obvious" or "You will know it when it happens." Alternate

translation: "As vultures gathering shows that there is a dead body, so these things show that the Son of Man is coming"

vultures

Vultures are large birds that fly together and eat the flesh of dead animals that they find. You could describe these birds this way or use the word for local birds that do this.

## Luke 18 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Jesus told two parables ([Luke 18:1-8](#) and [Luke 18:9-14](#)) and then taught that his followers were to be humble ([Luke 18:15-17](#)), to use everything they owned to help the poor ([Luke 18:18-30](#)), and to expect him to die soon ([Luke 18:31-34](#)). Then they all began to walk to Jerusalem, and Jesus healed a blind man ([Luke 18:35-43](#)).

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Judges

People expected judges always to do what God said was right and to make sure that other people did what was right. But some judges did not care about doing right or making sure others did right. Jesus called this kind of judge unjust. (See: justice)

#### Pharisees and tax collectors

The Pharisees thought that they themselves were the best examples of righteous good people, and they thought that tax collectors were the most unrighteous sinners. (See: righteous and sin)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

### Links:

[Luke 18:1 Notes](#)

---

#### Luke 18:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell a parable as he continues to teach his disciples. This is the same part of the story that began in [\[Luke 17:20\]](#)

Then he

"Then Jesus"

#### Luke 18:2

saying

A new sentence could begin here (if the comma at the end of the previous verse is changed to a period): "He said"

a certain city

Here "certain city" is a way to let the listener know that the narrative that follows takes place in a city, but the name of the city itself is not important.

did not respect people

"did not care about other people"

#### Luke 18:3

Now there was a widow

Jesus uses this phrase to introduce a new character to the story.

widow

A widow is a woman whose husband has died and who has not remarried. Jesus's hearers would have thought of her as a person who had no one to protect her from those who wanted to harm her.

she came often to him

The word "him" refers to the judge.

Help me get justice against

"Give me a just ruling against"

my opponent

"my enemy" or "the person who is trying to harm me." This is an opponent in a lawsuit. It is not clear whether the widow is suing the opponent or the opponent is suing the widow.

#### Luke 18:4

man

This refers here to "people" in general.

#### Luke 18:5

causes me trouble

"bothers me"

wear me out

"exhaust me"

by her constant coming

"by continually coming to me"

#### Luke 18:6

General Information:

Jesus has finished telling his parable and is now commenting about it to his disciples.

Listen to what the unjust judge says

"Think about what the unjust judge just said." Translate this in a way that people will understand that Jesus has already told what the judge said.

#### Luke 18:7

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of an explanation of the parable in [Luke 18:1-5](#).

Now

This word indicates that Jesus has ended the parable and has started explaining its meaning.

will not God also bring ... night?

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "God will also certainly bring ... night!"

his chosen ones

"the people he has chosen"

Will he delay long over them?

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "He will certainly not delay long over them!"

#### Luke 18:8

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the explanation of the parable in Luke 18:1-5 that began in Luke 18:7.

when the Son of Man comes, will he indeed find faith on the earth?  
Jesus asks this question so that his hearers will stop thinking that God is slow to help those who call to him for justice and will understand that the real problem is that they do not truly have faith in God. Alternate translation: "when the Son of Man comes, you need to be sure that he will find that you truly have faith in him." or "when the Son of Man comes, he will find few on earth who believe."

the Son of Man comes, will he indeed find

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man come, will I indeed find"

Luke 18:9

General Information:

Jesus begins to tell another parable to some other people who were persuaded that they themselves were righteous.

Then he

"Then Jesus"

to some

"to some people"

who trusted in themselves that they were righteous

"who had convinced themselves that they were righteous" or "who thought they were righteous"

despised

strongly disliked or hated

Luke 18:10

into the temple

"into the temple courtyard"

Luke 18:11

The Pharisee stood and prayed these things about himself

The meaning of the Greek text of this phrase is not clear.

Possible meanings are 1) "The Pharisee stood and prayed about himself in this way" or 2) "The Pharisee stood by himself and prayed."

robbers

Robbers are people who steal from other people by forcing the other people to give things to them, or by threatening to harm them if they refuse to give what the robbers ask for.

or even like this tax collector

The Pharisees believed that tax collectors were as sinful as robbers, unrighteous people, and adulterers. This could be made explicit. Alternate translation: "and I am certainly not like this sinful tax collector, who cheats people"

Luke 18:12

all that I get

"everything I earn"

Luke 18:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling his parable.

standing at a distance

"stood away from the Pharisee." This was a sign of humility. He did not feel worthy to be near the Pharisee.

lift up his eyes to heaven

To "lift up his eyes" means to look at something. Alternate translation: "look toward heaven" or "look upward"

hit his breast

This is a physical expression of great sorrow, and shows this man's repentance and humility. Alternate translation:

"hit his breast to show his sorrow"

God, have mercy on me, a sinner

"God, please be merciful to me. I am a sinner" or "God, please have mercy on me even though I have committed many sins"

Luke 18:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus comments on what the parable teaches.

this man went back down to his house justified

He was justified because God forgave his sin. Alternate translation: "God forgave the tax collector"

rather than the other

"rather than the other man" or "and not the other man."

Alternate translation: "but God did not forgive the Pharisee"

because everyone who exalts himself

With this phrase, Jesus switches from the story to state the general principle that the story illustrates.

will be humbled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God will humble"

will be exalted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God will greatly honor"

Luke 18:15

Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in the part of the story which began in Luke 17:20. Jesus welcomes the children and talks about them.

touch them, but

This could also be translated as separate sentences: "touch them. But"

they rebuked them

"the disciples tried to stop the parents from bringing their children to Jesus"

Luke 18:16

Jesus called them to him

"Jesus told the people to bring their infants to him"

Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them

These two sentences have similar meaning and they are combined for emphasis. Some languages emphasize in a different way. Alternate translation: "You must certainly allow the children to come to me"

belongs to such ones

This could be stated as a simile. Alternate translation:

"belongs to people who are like these little children"

Luke 18:17

Truly I say to you

"Surely I say to you." Jesus used this expression to

emphasize the importance of what he was about to say.

whoever will not receive the kingdom of God like a child will definitely not enter it

God requires people to accept his rule over them with trust and humility. Alternate translation: "whoever wants to enter God's kingdom must receive it with trust and humility like a child"

Luke 18:18

Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in the part of the story which began

in Luke 17:20. Jesus begins to talk with a ruler about entering the kingdom of heaven.

A certain ruler

This introduces a new character in the story. It only identifies him by his position.

what must I do

"what do I need to do" or "what is required of me"

inherit eternal life

"receive life that does not end." The term "inherit" usually refers to the property that a man left to his children when he dies. Therefore, this metaphor may mean he understood himself to be a child of God and desired for God to give him eternal life.

Luke 18:19

Why do you call me good? No one is good, except God alone

Jesus asks the question because he knows that the ruler will not like Jesus's answer to the ruler's question in verse 18.

Jesus does not expect the ruler to answer Jesus's question.

Jesus wants the ruler to understand that Jesus's answer to the ruler's question comes from God, who alone is good.

Alternate translation: "You know that no one is good, except God alone, so to call me good is to compare me with God"

No one is good, except God alone

This double negative emphasizes that God is the only one who is good. Alternate translation: "The only one who is good is God"

Luke 18:20

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 18:21

All these things

"All of these commandments"

Luke 18:22

When Jesus heard that

"When Jesus heard the man say that"

he said to him

"he answered him"

One thing you still lack

"You still need to do one more thing" or "There is one thing that you have not yet done"

sell all that you have

"sell all your possessions" or "sell everything that you own"

distribute it to the poor

"give away the money to the poor people"

come, follow me

"come with me as my disciple"

Luke 18:23

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 18:24

How difficult it is ... kingdom of God!

This is an exclamation, and not a question. Alternate translation: "It is so very hard ... kingdom of God!"

Luke 18:25

a camel to go through a needle's eye

It is impossible for a camel to fit through the eye of a needle. Jesus was probably using hyperbole to mean it is extremely difficult for a rich man to enter God's kingdom. needle's eye

The needle's eye is the hole in a sewing needle through which the thread is passed.

Luke 18:26

Those hearing it said

"The people who listening to Jesus said"

Then who can be saved?

It is possible that they were asking for an answer. But it is more likely that they used the question to emphasize their surprise at what Jesus said. Alternate translation: "Then no one can be saved from sin!" or in active form: "Then God will not save anyone!"

Luke 18:27

are impossible with people are possible with God

"people cannot do are possible for God to do" or "people cannot do, God can do"

Luke 18:28

Well, we

This phrase refers only to the disciples, and contrasts them with the rich ruler.

we have left

"we have given up" or "we have left behind"

everything that is our own

"all our wealth" or "all our possessions"

Luke 18:29

Truly, I say to you

Jesus uses this expression to stress the importance of what he is about to say.

there is no one who

This expression is intended to include not only the disciples, but also everyone else who has made the same sacrifices.

Luke 18:30

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the conversation about entering the kingdom of heaven.

who will not receive

This could be stated in positive form. First the words "there is not one who" in the previous verse

in this time

"in this present world"

in the age to come, eternal life

"he will also receive eternal life in the age to come"

Luke 18:31

Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in this part of the story that began in Luke 17:20. Jesus is talking to his disciples alone.

gathered the twelve to himself

Jesus took the twelve disciples to a place away from other people where they could be alone.

See, we are going up to Jerusalem

This indicates a significant change in the ministry of Jesus as he goes to Jerusalem for the final time.

that have been written by the prophets

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"that the prophets have written"

the prophets

This refers to the Old Testament prophets.

Son of Man

Jesus speaks of himself as "the Son of Man." Alternate

translation: "me, the Son of Man,"

will be accomplished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"will happen" or "will occur"

Luke 18:32

For he will be given over to the Gentiles

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For the Jewish leaders will give him over to the Gentiles"

he

Jesus speaks of himself. Alternate translation: "I"

will be mocked, and shamefully treated, and spit upon

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"they will mock him, treat him shamefully, and spit on him"

Luke 18:33

him ... him ... he

Jesus speaks of himself. Alternate translation: "me ... me ... I"

on the third day

This refers to the third day after his death. However, the disciples did not yet understand this, so it is best not to add this explanation when translating this verse.

Luke 18:34

General Information:

This verse is not part of the main story, but rather a comment about this part of the story.

They understood none of these things

"They did not understand any of these things"

these things

This refers to Jesus's description of how he would suffer and die in Jerusalem, and that he would rise from the dead.

this word was hidden from them

This can be stated in active form, but it is not clear whether it is God or Jesus who hid the word from them. Alternate translation: "Jesus hid his message from them" or "God prevented them from understanding the meaning of what Jesus was telling them"

the things that were said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that Jesus said"

Luke 18:35

General Information:

Jesus heals a blind man as he approaches Jericho. These verses give background information and information about the setting of the story.

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

a certain blind man was sitting

"there was a blind man sitting." Here "certain" means only that the man is an important new participant in the story.

Luke does not mention his name.

Luke 18:36

and hearing

and hearing

It may be helpful to start a new sentence here after changing the comma at the end of the previous verse (verse 35) to a period. Alternate translation: "When he heard"

Luke 18:37

They told him

"People in the crowd told the blind man"

Jesus of Nazareth

Jesus came from the town of Nazareth, which was located in Galilee.

was passing by

"was walking past him"

Luke 18:38

So

This word marks an event that happened because of something else that happened first. In this case, the crowd had told the blind man that Jesus was walking by.

cried out

"called out" or "shouted"

Son of David

Jesus was a descendant of David, Israel's most important king.

have mercy on me

"show me pity" or "show me compassion"

Luke 18:39

The ones who were walking ahead

"The people who were walking at the front of the crowd" to be quiet

"to be silent" or "not to shout"

cried out all the more

This could mean that he cried out louder or that he cried out more persistently.

Luke 18:40

that the man be brought to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people to bring the blind man to him"

Luke 18:41

to receive my sight

"to be able to see"

Luke 18:42

Receive your sight

This is a command, but Jesus is not commanding the man to do anything. Jesus is healing the man by commanding him to be healed. Alternate translation: "You will now receive your sight"

Your faith has healed you

These words are a metonym. It was because of the man's faith that Jesus healed the man. Alternate translation: "I have healed you because you have believed in me"

Luke 18:43

glorifying God

"giving glory to God" or "praising God"

---

## Chapter 19

# Luke 19 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

After Jesus helped a man named Zacchaeus repent of his sins

## Special concepts in this chapter

### "Sinner"

The Pharisees referred to a group of people as "sinners." The Jewish leaders thought these people were sinful, but in reality the leaders were also sinful. This can be taken as irony.

### Servants

God expects his people to remember that everything in the world belongs to God. God gives his people things so they can serve him. He wants them to please him by doing what he wants them to do with everything he has given them. One day Jesus will ask his servants what they have done with everything he gave them to use. He will give a reward to those who have done what he wanted them to do, and he will punish those who have not.

### The donkey and the colt

Jesus rode into Jerusalem on an animal. In this way he was like a king who came into a city after he had won an important battle. Also, the kings of Israel in the Old Testament rode on donkeys. Other kings rode on horses. So Jesus was showing that he was the king of Israel and that he was not like other kings.

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about this event. Matthew and Mark wrote that the disciples brought Jesus a donkey. John wrote that Jesus found a donkey. Luke wrote that they brought him a colt. Only Matthew wrote that there were both a donkey and a colt. No one knows for sure whether Jesus rode the donkey or the colt. It is best to translate each of these accounts as it appears in the ULB without trying to make them all say exactly the same thing. (See: [Matthew 21:1-7](#) and [Mark 11:1-7](#) and [Luke 19:29-36](#) and [John 12:14-15](#))

### Spreading garments and branches

When a king would enter one of the cities he ruled, people would cut branches from trees and would take off the clothes that they wore to stay warm in cold weather and spread them all on the road so the king would ride over them. They did this to honor the king and show that they loved him.

### The merchants in the temple

Jesus forced the people who were selling animals in the temple to leave. He did this to show everyone that he had authority over the temple and that only those who were righteous, who did what God said was good, could be in it. (See: righteous)

## Links:

[Luke 19:1 Notes](#)

---

### Luke 19:1

#### General Information:

Verses 1-2 begin to give background information for the events that follow.

### Luke 19:2

Behold, there was a man there

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "There was a man who was"

He was a chief tax collector and was rich

This is background information about Zacchaeus.

### Luke 19:3

#### General Information:

This verse completes the background information begun in [Luke 19:1-2]

He was trying

"Zacchaeus was trying"

because he was small in height

"because he was short"

### Luke 19:4

So he ran

The author has finished giving the background to the event and now begins to describe the event itself.

a sycamore tree

"a sycamore fig tree." It produces small round fruit about 2.5 centimeters across. Alternate translation: "a fig tree" or "a tree"

### Luke 19:5

the place

"the tree" or "where Zacchaeus was"

### Luke 19:6

So he hurried

"So Zacchaeus hurried"

### Luke 19:7

they all complained

The Jews hated the tax collectors and did not think any good person should associate with them.

He has gone in to visit a man who is a sinner

"Jesus has gone into the house of a sinner to visit him"

a sinner

"an obvious sinner" or "a real sinner"

### Luke 19:8

the Lord

This refers to Jesus.

restore four times the amount

"return to them four times as much as I took from them"

### Luke 19:9

salvation has come to this house

It was understood that salvation comes from God. Alternate translation: "God has saved this household"

this house

The word "house" here refers to the people living in the house or the family.

he too

"this man too" or "Zacchaeus also"

son of Abraham

Possible meanings are 1) "descendant of Abraham" and 2)

"person who has faith as Abraham did."

Luke 19:10

the Son of Man came

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, came"

the people who are lost

"the people who have wandered away from God" or "those who by sinning have wandered away from God"

Luke 19:11

General Information:

Jesus begins to tell a parable to the crowd. This verse gives background information about why Jesus tells the parable.

that the kingdom of God was about to appear immediately

The Jews believed that the Messiah would establish the kingdom as soon as he came to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "that Jesus would immediately begin to rule over God's kingdom"

Luke 19:12

A certain nobleman

"A certain man who was a member of the ruling class" or "A certain man from an important family"

to receive for himself a kingdom

This is the image of a lesser king going to a greater king.

The greater king would give the lesser king the right and authority to rule over his own country.

Luke 19:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

He called

"The nobleman called." It may be helpful to state that the man did this before he left to receive his kingdom.

Alternate translation: "Before he left, he called"

gave them ten minas

"gave each of them one mina"

ten minas

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages, what people would be paid for about four months' work, so ten minas would have been about three years' wages. Alternate translation: "ten valuable coins" or "a large amount of money"

Conduct business

"Trade with this money" or "Use this money in order to earn more"

Luke 19:14

his citizens

"the people of his country"

a delegation

"a group of people to represent them" or "several messengers"

Luke 19:15

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

having received the kingdom

"after he had become king"

to be called to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to come to him"

what profit they had made

"how much money they had earned"

Luke 19:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

The first

"The first servant"

came before him

"came before the nobleman"

your mina has made ten minas more

It is implied that the servant was the one who caused the profit. Alternate translation: "I used your mina to make a profit of ten more minas"

mina

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages, what people would be paid for about four months' work. See how you translated this in [Luke 19:13]

Luke 19:17

Well done

"You have done well." Your language may have a phrase that an employer would use to show approval, such as "Good job."

very little

This refers to the one mina, which the nobleman apparently did not consider to be a lot of money.

Luke 19:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

The second

"The second servant"

Your mina, lord, has made five minas

It is implied that the servant was the one who caused the profit. Alternate translation: "Lord, I used your mina to make a profit of five more minas"

mina

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages, what people would be paid for about four months' work. See how you translated this in [Luke 19:13]

Luke 19:19

You take charge over five cities

"You will have authority over five cities"

Luke 19:20

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

Another came

"Another servant came"

mina

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages, what people would be paid for about four months' work. See how you translated this in [Luke 19:13]

kept safely in a cloth

"wrapped in a cloth and stored away"

Luke 19:21

a demanding person

"a stern man" or "a man who expects a lot from his servants"

You take up what you did not put in

This was probably a proverb. A person who takes out of storage or out of a bank things that he did not put in is a metaphor for someone who benefits from other people's hard work. Alternate translation: "You take out what you did not put in" or "You are like a person who takes out what other people put in"

you reap what you did not sow

This was probably a proverb. A person who harvests food that someone else has planted is a metaphor for someone who benefits from other people's hard work. Alternate translation: "you are like a person who reaps the fruit of what other people sowed"

Luke 19:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

By your own words

His "words" refer to all that he had said. Alternate translation: "Based on what you have said"

You knew that I am a demanding person

The nobleman was repeating what the servant had said about him. He was not saying that it was true. Alternate translation: "You say that I am a demanding person"

Luke 19:23

why did you not put my money ... interest?

The nobleman uses a question to rebuke the wicked servant. Alternate translation: "you should have put my money ... interest."

put my money in the bank

"lent my money to a bank." Cultures that do not have banks might translate it as "let someone borrow my money."

bank

A bank is a business that safely holds money for people. A bank lends that money to others for a profit. Therefore it pays an extra amount, or interest, to the people who keep their money in the bank.

I would have collected it with interest

"I could have collected that amount plus the interest it would have earned" or "I would have gained a profit from it"

interest

Interest is money that a bank pays people who put their money in the bank.

Luke 19:24

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

The nobleman

The nobleman had become king. See how you translated this in Luke 19:12.

them that stood by

"the people who were standing near them"

mina

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages, what people would be paid for about four months' work. See how you translated this in [Luke 19:13]

Luke 19:25

he has ten minas.

"he already has ten minas!"

Luke 19:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

I say to you

It can be stated clearly that the nobleman is speaking.

Alternate translation: "And the nobleman replied, 'I say to you' or "But the nobleman said 'I tell you this"

everyone who has will be given more

It is implied that what he has is the money he earned by using his mina faithfully. This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: "everyone who uses well what he has been given, I will give him more" or "to everyone who uses well what I have given him I will give more"

from him that has not

It is implied that the reason he does not have money is because he did not use his mina faithfully. Alternate translation: "from the person who does not use well what I have given him"

will be taken away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will take away from him"

Luke 19:27

these enemies of mine

Since the enemies were not right there, some languages would say "those enemies of mine."

Luke 19:28

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about the nobleman and his servants. This verse tells us what Jesus does after this part of the story.

When he had said these things

"When Jesus had said these things"

going up to Jerusalem

Jerusalem was higher than Jericho, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem.

Luke 19:29

General Information:

Jesus approaches Jerusalem.

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

when he came near

The word "he" refers to Jesus. His disciples were also traveling with him.

Bethphage

Bethphage is a village on the Mount of Olives, which is across the Kidron Valley from Jerusalem.

the mountain that is called Olives

"the hill that is called the Mount of Olives" or "the hill that is called 'Olive Tree Mountain'"

Luke 19:30

a colt

"a young donkey" or "a young riding animal"

that has never been ridden

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"that no one has ever ridden"

Luke 19:31

If anyone asks you, 'Why are you untying it?' say

The inner quote can also be translated as an indirect quote.



Alternate translation: "If any one asks you why you are untying it, say"

Luke 19:32

Those who were sent

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"The two disciples that Jesus sent"

Luke 19:33

the owners

"the owners of the colt"

Luke 19:34

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 19:35

threw their cloaks upon the colt

"put their robes on the young donkey." Cloaks are outer robes.

set Jesus on it

"helped Jesus get up on and ride on the colt"

Luke 19:36

they spread their cloaks

"people spread their cloaks." This is a sign of giving honor to someone.

Luke 19:37

As he was now approaching

"As Jesus was going near." Jesus's disciples were traveling with him.

where the Mount of Olives descends

"where the road goes down from the Mount of Olives"

mighty works which they had seen

"great things they had seen Jesus do"

Luke 19:38

Blessed is the king

They were saying this about Jesus.

in the name of the Lord

Here "name" refers to power and authority. Also, "Lord" refers to God.

Peace in heaven

"May there be peace in heaven" or "We want to see peace in heaven"

glory in the highest

"may there be glory in the highest" or "we want to see glory in the highest." The words "the highest" refer to heaven, which is a metonym for God, who lives in heaven. Alternate translation: "Let everyone give glory to God in the highest heaven"

Luke 19:39

in the multitude

"in the large crowd"

rebuke your disciples

"tell your disciples to stop doing these things"

Luke 19:40

I tell you

Jesus said this to emphasize what he would say next.

if these were silent

Jesus is describing something that could have happened but did not. Some translators may need to make it clear what Jesus was implying when he said this. Alternate translation: "I will not rebuke them, for if these people were to be silent"

the stones would cry out

"the stones would call out praises"

Luke 19:41

the city

This refers to Jerusalem.

he wept over it

To weep over something means to weep because of something. The word "it" refers to the city of Jerusalem, but it represents the people who lived in that city. Alternate translation: "he cried about the people of Jerusalem"

Luke 19:42

If only you had known ... bring you peace

Jesus expresses his sadness that the people of Jerusalem had missed the opportunity to be at peace with God.

you

The word "you" is singular because Jesus is speaking to the city. But if this would be unnatural in your language, you could use a plural form of "you" to refer to the people of the city.

they are hidden from your eyes

"your eyes" refer to the ability to see. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you can no longer see them"

Luke 19:43

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking.

For

What follows is the reason for Jesus's sadness.

the days will come upon you when your enemies

This indicates that they will experience difficult times.

Some languages do not talk about time "coming." Alternate translation: "in the future these things will happen to you: Your enemies" or "soon you will endure troublesome times. Your enemies"

you ... your

The word "you" is singular because Jesus is speaking to the city as he would to a woman. But if this would be unnatural in your language, you could use a plural form of "you" to refer to the people of the city.

barricade

This refers to a wall to keep the people from getting out of the city.

Luke 19:44

They will strike you down to the ground, and your children with you Jesus is speaking to the people of the city as if he were speaking to the city itself as he would speak to a woman. He speaks of the people who live in the city as if they are the woman's children, and thus the city's children. To strike down a city is to destroy its walls and buildings, and to strike down its children is to kill those who live in it. Alternate translation: "They will completely destroy you and kill all who live in you" or "They will completely destroy your city and kill all of you"

They will not leave one stone upon another

"They will not leave any of the stones in place." Jesus uses hyperbole here to emphasize the extent of the devastation that enemies will cause in Jerusalem. The enemies will completely destroy the city, which is built of stones.

Alternate translation: "They will destroy Jerusalem"

you did not recognize  
"you were not aware of" or "you were not grateful during"  
the time of your visitation  
The abstract noun "visitation" can be translated as a verb phrase. Alternate translation: "the time when God visited you" or "the time during which God was with you."  
visitation  
This is a "visit" by an overseer to make sure that things are going well with those over whom he is in charge, not a casual social visit.  
Luke 19:45  
Connecting Statement:  
This is the next event in this part of the story. Jesus enters the temple in Jerusalem.  
Jesus entered the temple  
You may need to make explicit that he first entered Jerusalem, where the temple was located. Alternate translation: "Jesus entered Jerusalem and then went to the temple courtyard"  
entered the temple  
Only priests were allowed to enter the temple building. Alternate translation: "went into the temple courtyard"  
cast out  
"throw out" or "force out"  
Luke 19:46  
It is written

This is a quotation from Isaiah. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The scriptures say" or "A prophet wrote these words in the scriptures"  
My house  
The word "My" refers to God and "house" refers to the temple.  
house of prayer  
"a place where people pray to me"  
a den of robbers  
Jesus speaks of the temple as if it were a place where thieves come together. Alternate translation: "a place where thieves hide"  
Luke 19:47  
Connecting Statement:  
This is the end of this part of the story. Verses 47-48 tell about ongoing action that continues after the main part of the story ends.  
in the temple  
"in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"  
destroy him  
This hyperbole refers to killing Jesus. Alternate translation: "kill him"  
Luke 19:48  
were listening to him intently  
"were paying close attention to what Jesus was saying"

---

## Chapter 20

# Luke 20 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 20:17, 42-43, which is from the Old Testament.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Using questions to trap people

When Jesus asked the Pharisees who gave John the authority to baptize ([Luke 20:4](#)), they could not answer because any answer they gave would give someone a reason to say that they were wrong ([Luke 20:5-6](#)). They thought that they would be able to say that Jesus was wrong when they asked him if people should pay taxes to Caesar ([Luke 20:22](#)), but Jesus gave them an answer that they had not thought of.

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. In this chapter, Jesus quotes a psalm that records David calling his son "Lord," that is, "master." However, to the Jews, ancestors were greater than their descendants. In this passage, Jesus is trying to lead his hearers to the true understanding that the Messiah will himself be divine, and that he himself is the Messiah. ([Luke 20:41-44](#)).

## Links:

[Luke 20:1 Notes](#)

---

### Luke 20:1

#### Connecting Statement:

The chief priests, scribes, and elders question Jesus in the temple.

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

in the temple

"in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

### Luke 20:2

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Luke 20:3

#### General Information:

Jesus responds to the chief priests, scribes, and elders.

He answered and said to them

"Jesus replied"

I will also ask you a question, and you tell me

The words "I will ... ask you a question" are a statement.  
The words "you tell me" are a command.

Luke 20:4

Was it from heaven or from men

Jesus knows that John's authority comes from heaven, so he is not asking for information. He asks the question so the Jewish leaders will have to tell what they think to all who are listening. This question is rhetorical, but you will probably have to translate it as a question. Alternate translation: "Do you think John's authority to baptize people came from heaven or from men" or "Was it God who told John to baptize people, or did people tell him to do it" from heaven

"from God." Jewish people avoided referring to God by his name "Yahweh." Often they used the word "heaven" to refer to him.

Luke 20:5

They reasoned

"They discussed" or "They considered their answer"

with themselves

"among themselves" or "with each other"

If we say, 'From heaven,' he

Some languages might prefer an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "If we say that John's authority is from heaven, he"

From heaven

"From God." Jewish people avoided referring to God by his name "Yahweh." Often they used the word "heaven" to refer to him. See how these words are translated in [Luke 20:4] he will say

"Jesus will say"

Luke 20:6

if we say, 'From men,'

Some languages might prefer an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "if we say that John's authority is from men," stone us

"kill us by throwing stones on us." God's Law commanded that his people stone those of his people who mocked him or his prophets.

Luke 20:7

So they answered

"So the chief priests, scribes and elders answered." The word "so" marks an event that happened because of something else that happened first. In this case, they had reasoned with themselves ([Luke 20:5-6](#)), and they did not have an answer they wanted to say.

they answered that they did not know where it came from.

This could be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "they said, 'We do not know where it came from.'"

where it came from

"where John's baptism came from." Alternate translation:

"where John's authority to baptize came from" or "who authorized John to baptize people"

Luke 20:8

Neither will I tell you

"And I will not tell you." Jesus knew they were not willing to tell him the answer, so he responded in the same manner. Alternate translation: "Just as you will not tell me, I will not tell you"

Luke 20:9

General Information:

Jesus begins to tell a parable to the people in the temple courtyard.

rented it out to vine growers

"allowed some vine growers to use it in exchange for payment" or "allowed some vine growers to use it and pay him later." Payment might be in the form of money or a portion of the harvest.

vine growers

These are people who tend grape vines and grow grapes.

Alternate translation: "grape farmers"

Luke 20:10

the appointed time

"the time they had agreed to pay him." This would have been at the harvest time.

of the fruit of the vineyard

"some of the grapes" or "some of what they produced in the vineyard." It could also refer to the things they made from grapes or the money they earned by selling the grapes.

sent him away empty-handed

An empty hand is a metaphor for "nothing." Alternate translation: "sent him away without paying him" or "sent him away without the grapes"

Luke 20:11

beat him

"beat that servant"

treated him shamefully

"humiliated him"

sent him away empty-handed

Having an empty hand is a metaphor for having nothing.

Alternate translation: "sent him away without paying him" or "sent him away without any grapes"

Luke 20:12

yet a third

"even a third servant" or "yet another servant." The word "yet" hints at the fact that the landowner should not have had to send the second servant, but he went beyond that and sent a third servant.

wounded him

"injured that servant"

threw him out

"threw him out of the vineyard"

Luke 20:13

What will I do?

This question emphasizes that the vineyard owner thought carefully about what he was going to do. Alternate translation: "Here is what I will do:"

Luke 20:14

when the vine growers saw him

"when the farmers saw the owner's son"

Let us kill him

They were not asking permission. The said this to encourage each other to kill the heir.

Luke 20:15

They threw him out of the vineyard

"The vine growers forced the son out of the vineyard"

What then will the lord of the vineyard do to them?  
Jesus uses a question to get his listeners to pay attention to

what the owner of the vineyard will do. Alternate translation: "So now, listen to what the lord of the vineyard will do to them."

Luke 20:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling his parable to the crowd.

May it never be

"May it never happen"

Luke 20:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching the crowd.

But Jesus looked at them

"But Jesus stared at them" or "But he looked straight at them." He did this to hold them accountable to understand what he was saying.

What is the meaning of that which is written: 'The stone ... cornerstone'? Jesus uses a question to teach the crowd. Alternate translation: "You should be able to understand that which is written: 'The stone ... cornerstone.'"

that which is written

"this scripture"

The stone that the builders rejected has become the cornerstone. This is the first of three metaphors in a prophecy from the book of Psalms. This one refers to the Messiah as if he were a stone that builders chose not to use, but that God made the most important stone.

The stone that the builders rejected

"The stone that the builders said was not good enough to use for building." In those days people used stones to build the walls of houses and other buildings.

the builders

This refers to the religious rulers who are rejecting Jesus as Messiah.

the cornerstone

"the chief stone of the building" or "the most important stone of the building"

Luke 20:18

Everyone who falls ... broken to pieces

This second metaphor speaks of people who reject the Messiah as if they fall over a stone and are injured.

will be broken to pieces

This is a result of falling onto the stone. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will break up into pieces"

the one on whom it falls

"the one that stone falls on." This third metaphor speaks about the Messiah judging those who reject him as if he were a large stone that would crush them.

Luke 20:19

sought to lay hands on him

In this verse, to "lay hands on" someone is to arrest that person. Alternate translation: "looked for a way to arrest Jesus"

in that very hour

"immediately"

they were afraid of the people

This is the reason that they did not arrest Jesus right away. The people respected Jesus, and the religious leaders were afraid of what the people might do if they arrested him.

Alternate translation: "they did not arrest him because they were afraid of the people"

Luke 20:20

they sent out spies

"the scribes and chief priests sent spies to watch Jesus"

that they might find fault with his speech

"because they wanted to accuse Jesus of saying something bad"

to the rule and to the authority of the governor

"Rule" and "authority" are two ways of saying that they wanted the governor to judge Jesus. It can be translated with one or both expressions. Alternate translation: "so that the governor would punish Jesus"

Luke 20:21

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of the next event in the story. Some time has passed since Jesus was questioned in the temple by the chief priests. The spies are now questioning Jesus.

They asked him

"The spies asked Jesus"

Teacher, we know ... way of God

The spies were trying to deceive Jesus. They did not believe these things about Jesus.

we know

"we" refers only to the spies.

are not partial to anyone

Possible meanings are 1) "you tell the truth even if important people do not like it" or 2) "you do not favor one person over another"

but you teach the truth about the way of God

This is part of what the spies were saying that they knew about Jesus.

Luke 20:22

Is it lawful ... or not?

They hoped that Jesus would say either "yes" or "no." If he said "yes," then the Jewish people would be angry with him for telling them to pay taxes to a foreign government. If he said "no," then the religious leaders could tell the Romans that Jesus was teaching the people to break the Roman laws.

Is it lawful

They were asking about God's law, not about Caesar's law.

Alternate translation: "Does our law permit us"

Caesar

Because Caesar was the ruler of the Roman government, they could refer to the Roman government by Caesar's name.

Luke 20:23

But Jesus understood their craftiness

"But Jesus understood how tricky they were" or "But Jesus saw that they were trying to trap him." The word "their" refers to the spies.

Luke 20:24

a denarius

This is a Roman silver coin worth a day's wages.

Whose image and name is on it?

Jesus uses a question to respond to those who were trying to trick him. Alternate translation: "Tell me, whose image and name do you see on it?"

image and name  
"picture and name"

Luke 20:25

He said to them

"Then Jesus said to them"

Caesar

Here "Caesar" refers to the Roman government.

and to God

The word "give" is understood from the previous phrase. It can be repeated here. Alternate translation: "and give to God"

Luke 20:26

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of this event about the spies and the part of the story which began in Luke 20:1.

They were not able to find fault with what he had said

"The spies could not find anything wrong with what he said"

but marveling at his answer, they were silent

"but they were amazed at his answer and did not say anything"

Luke 20:27

General Information:

We do not know where this takes place, though it possibly takes place in the temple courtyard. Jesus is talking with some Sadducees.

the ones who say that there is no resurrection

This phrase identifies the Sadducees as being the group of Jews that say that no one would rise from the dead. It does not imply that some Sadducees believed that there is a resurrection and some did not.

Luke 20:28

if a man's brother dies, having a wife, and being childless

"if a man's brother dies when he has a wife but does not have children"

the man should take the brother's wife

"the man should marry his dead brother's widow"

raise up children for his brother

The Jews considered the first son born to a woman who married her dead husband's brother as if he were the son of the woman's first husband. This son inherited the property of his mother's first husband and carried on his name.

Luke 20:29

General Information:

The Sadducees tell Jesus a short story in verses 29-32. This is a story they made up as an example. In verse 33, they ask Jesus a question about the story they told.

There were seven brothers

This may have happened, but it is probably a story that they made up to test Jesus.

the first

"brother number one" or "the oldest"

died childless

"died without having any children" or "died, but did not have any children"

Luke 20:30

the second as well

The Sadducees kept the story short by not repeating many

of the details. Alternate translation: "the second married her and the same thing happened" or "the second brother married her and died without having any children"

the second

"brother number two" or "the oldest brother who was still alive"

Luke 20:31

The third took her

"The third married her"

The third

"Brother number three" or "The oldest brother who was still alive"

and in the same way the seven also left no children and died

The speakers kept the story short by omitting details.

Alternate translation: "in the same way the rest of the seven brothers married her and died without having any children"

the seven

"all seven of the brothers" or "each of the seven brothers"

Luke 20:32

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 20:33

Connecting Statement:

The Sadducees finish asking Jesus their question.

In the resurrection

"When people are raised from the dead" or "When dead people become alive again." Some languages have a way of showing that the Sadducees did not believe that there would be a resurrection, such as "In the supposed resurrection" or "When dead people are supposedly raised from the dead."

Luke 20:34

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to answer the Sadducees.

The sons of this age

"The people of this world" or "The people of this time." This is in contrast with those in heaven or the people who live after the resurrection.

marry and are given in marriage

In that culture they spoke of men marrying women and women being given in marriage to their husband. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "get married"

Luke 20:35

those who are regarded as worthy in that age

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people in that age whom God will consider to be worthy" to receive the resurrection from the dead

"to be raised from the dead" or "to rise from death" from the dead

From among all those who have died. The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To receive resurrection from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

will neither marry nor be given in marriage

In that culture they spoke of men marrying women and women being given in marriage to their husband. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will not

marry" or "will not get married." This is after the resurrection.

Luke 20:36

Neither can they die anymore

This is after the resurrection. Alternate translation: "They will not be able to die anymore"

are sons of God, being sons of the resurrection

"are children of God because he has brought them back from the dead"

Luke 20:37

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes answering the Sadducees.

But that the dead are raised, even Moses showed

The word "even" is here because the Sadducees might not have been surprised that some scriptures say that the dead are raised, but they did not expect Moses to have written something like that. Alternate translation: "But even Moses showed that dead people rise from the dead"

the dead are raised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God causes the dead to live again"

in the place concerning the bush, where he calls the Lord

The implied information can be supplied. Alternate translation: "in the scripture about the burning bush, where he wrote about the Lord being"

the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob

"the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob." They all worshiped the same God.

Luke 20:38

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Jesus explains how this story proves that people rise from the dead.

he is not the God of the dead, but of the living

These two phrases have similar meaning. They are used together for emphasis. Some languages have different ways of showing emphasis. Alternate translation: "the Lord is the God of living people only"

but of the living

"but the God of living people." Since these people died physically, they must still be alive spiritually. Alternate translation: "but the God of people whose spirits are alive, even though their bodies may have died"

because all live to him

"because in God's sight they all are still alive" or "because their spirits are alive in God's presence"

Luke 20:39

Some of the scribes answered

"Some of the scribes said to Jesus." There were scribes present when the Sadducees were questioning Jesus.

Luke 20:40

For they

It is unclear if this refers to the scribes, or the Sadducees, or both. It is best to keep the statement general.

they did not dare ask him any more questions

"they were afraid to ask him any more questions" or "they did not risk asking him any more questions." They understood that they did not know as much as Jesus did, but they did not want to say that. This can be made explicit.

Alternate translation: "they did not ask him any more tricky questions because they feared that his wise answers would make them appear foolish again"

Luke 20:41

General Information:

Jesus asks the scribes a question.

How do they say ... son?

"Why do they say ... son?" Jesus uses a question to make the scribes think about who the Messiah is. Alternate translation: "Let's think about them saying ... son." or "I will talk about them saying ... son."

they say

The prophets, the religious rulers, and the Jewish people in general knew that the Messiah was the son of David.

Alternate translation: "everyone says" or "people say"

David's son

"King David's descendant." The word "son" is used here to refer to a descendant. In this case it refers to the one who would reign over God's kingdom.

Luke 20:42

The Lord said to my Lord

This is a quotation from the book of Psalms which says "Yahweh said to my Lord." But the Jews stopped saying "Yahweh" and often said "Lord" instead. Alternate translation: "The Lord God said to my Lord" or "God said to my Lord"

my Lord

David was referring to the Christ as "my Lord."

Sit at my right hand

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me"

Luke 20:43

until I make your enemies your footstool

The Messiah's enemies are spoken of as if they were furniture on which he would rest his feet. This was an image of submission. Alternate translation: "until I make your enemies like a footstool for you" or "until I conquer your enemies for you"

Luke 20:44

David therefore calls the Christ 'Lord,'

In the culture of that time, a father was more respected than a son. David's use of the title 'Lord' for the Christ implies that he was greater than David.

so how is he David's son?

"so how can the Christ be David's son?" This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "and this shows that the Christ is not merely David's descendant"

Luke 20:45

Connecting Statement:

Jesus now directs his attention to his disciples and speaks mainly to them.

Luke 20:46

Beware of

"Be on guard against"

who desire to walk in long robes

Long robes would show that they were important.

Alternate translation: "who like to walk around wearing their important robes"

Luke 20:47

They also devour widows' houses

"They also eat up widows' houses." The scribes are spoken of as if they were hungry animals that eat up the widows' houses. The word "houses" is a synecdoche for both where the widow lives and all the possessions she puts in her home. Alternate translation: "They also take away from widows all their possessions"

for a show they make long prayers

"they pretend to be righteous and make long prayers" or

"they make long prayers so that people will see them"

Men like this will receive greater condemnation

"They will receive a more severe judgment." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will certainly punish them very severely"

---

Chapter 21

## Luke 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Jesus told his disciples much about what would happen before he returned.

Special concepts in this chapter

"For many will come in my name, saying, 'I am he,'"

Jesus taught that before he returned many people would falsely claim to be him returning. It will also be a time when many people will hate Jesus's followers and even want to kill them.

"Until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled"

The Jews spoke of the time between when the Babylonians forced their ancestors to go to Babylon and the time when the Messiah would come as "the times of the Gentiles," the time when the Gentiles would rule over the Jews.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

Links:

[Luke 21:1 Notes](#)

---

Luke 21:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins teaching his disciples, but it is uncertain whether this occurs on the same day that the Sadducees question Jesus

gifts

You may need to make explicit what the gifts are. Alternate translation: "gifts of money"

treasury

The "treasury" means the boxes in the temple courtyard where people put money as a gift to God.

Luke 21:2

a certain poor widow

This is a way of introducing a new character to the story.

two mites

"two small coins" or "two tiny copper coins." These were the least valuable of the coins people used then. Alternate translation: "two pennies" or "two small coins of little value"

Luke 21:3

Truly I say to you

This means that what Jesus was about to say was very important.

I say to you

Jesus was talking to his disciples. The word "you" is plural. this poor widow put in more than all of them

God considers her gift, a small amount of money, more significant than the large amounts of money the men gave. Alternate translation: "the small gift of this widow is more valuable than the larger gifts of the rich men"

Luke 21:4

gave gifts out of their abundance

"have a lot of money but only gave a small portion of it"

out of her poverty

"who has very little money"

Luke 21:5

Connecting Statement:

Jesus switches from talking about the widow to teaching about the temple.

offerings

things people had given to God

Luke 21:6

these things that you see

This refers to the beautiful temple and its decorations.

the days will come when

"there will be a time when" or "someday"

when not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down

Jesus uses hyperbole here to emphasize the extent of the devastation that enemies will cause to the temple. The enemies will completely destroy the temple, which is built of stones. Alternate translation: "when all these things will be destroyed" or "when enemies will destroy all of these things"

not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation:

"every stone will be removed from its place and torn down"

left on another which will not be torn down

A new sentence can be started here, and it can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "left on another. They will all be torn down" or "left on another. Enemies will tear

down every stone"

Luke 21:7

they asked him

"the disciples asked Jesus" or "Jesus's disciples asked him" these things

This refers to what Jesus has just said about enemies destroying the temple.

Luke 21:8

that you are not deceived

Jesus was talking to his disciples. The word "you" is plural. Alternate translation: "that you do not believe lies" or "that no one deceives you"

in my name

People coming in his name claim to represent him.

Alternate translation: "claiming to be me" or "claiming to have my authority"

I am he

"I am the Christ" or "I am the Messiah"

Do not go after them

"Do not believe them" or "Do not become their disciples"

Luke 21:9

wars and riots

Here "wars" probably refers to fighting between countries, and "riots" probably refers to people fighting against their own leaders or against others in their country. Alternate translation: "wars and rebellions" or "wars and revolutions"

do not be terrified

"do not let these things terrify you" or "do not be afraid"

the end

Possible meanings are: (1) The end of the era in which the disciples to whom Jesus spoke were in at the time. Alternate translation: "the end of the age" or (2) The end of the heavens and earth as we know them. Alternate translation: "the end of the world"

will not happen immediately

Implied word can be supplied here. Alternate translation: "will not happen immediately after the wars and riots" or "will not happen immediately after those things happen"

Luke 21:10

Then he said to them

"Then Jesus said to his disciples." Since this is a continuation of Jesus speaking from the previous verse, some languages may prefer not to say "Then he said to them."

Nation will rise against nation

Here "nation" is a metonym for the people of the nation, and "rise against" is a metonym for attack. The word "nation" represents nations in general, not one particular nation. Alternate translation: "The people of one nation will attack the people of other nations" or "The people of some nations will attack the people of other nations"

Nation

This refers to ethnic groups of people rather than to countries.

kingdom against kingdom

The words "will rise" are understood from the previous phrase and mean attack. Alternate translation: "kingdom will rise against kingdom" or "the people of some kingdoms

will attack the people of other kingdoms"

Luke 21:11

in various places famines and plagues

The words "there will be" are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "there will be famines and plagues in many places" or "there will be times of hunger and diseases in different places"

terrifying events

"events that terrify people" or "events that cause people to be very afraid"

Luke 21:12

these things

This refers to the terrible things that Jesus has said will happen.

they will lay their hands on you

"they will grab you." This expression refers to people exercising authority over the disciples. Alternate translation: "they will arrest you"

they will

"people will" or "enemies will"

you

Jesus was talking to his disciples. The word "you" is plural.

delivering you over to the synagogues

The word "synagogues" is a metonym for the people in the synagogues, specifically the leaders. Alternate translation: "giving you over to the leaders of the synagogues" or "taking you to the synagogues so that the people there can do to you whatever they want to do"

and prisons

"and delivering you over to the prisons" or "and putting you in prisons"

because of my name

The word "name" is here used to refer to Jesus himself. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you follow me"

Luke 21:13

for your testimony

"for you to tell them your testimony about me"

Luke 21:14

Therefore

"Because of this," referring to everything Jesus has said, beginning in [Luke 21:10]

resolve in your hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds. Alternate translation: "make up your mind" or "decide firmly"

not to prepare your defense ahead of time

"not to figure out ahead of time what you will say in order to defend yourself against their accusations"

Luke 21:15

wisdom that all your adversaries will not be able to resist or contradict "wisdom that none of your adversaries will be able to resist or contradict"

I will give you words and wisdom

"I will tell you what wise things to say"

words and wisdom

These can be combined into one phrase. Alternate translation: "words of wisdom" or "wise words"

contradict

show to be false



Luke 21:16

you will be given over also by parents, brothers, relatives, and friends  
This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation:  
"even your parents, brothers, relatives, and friends will  
give you over to the authorities"

they will put some of you to death

"they will kill some of you." Possible meanings are 1) "the  
authorities will kill some of you" or 2) "those who deliver  
you up will kill some of you." The first meaning is more  
likely.

Luke 21:17

You will be hated by everyone

This can be translated in active form. The word "everyone"  
emphasizes how many people will hate the disciples, either  
through 1) exaggeration Alternate translation: "It will seem  
like you are hated by everyone" or "It will seem like  
everyone hates you" or 2) a generalization. Alternate  
translation: "You will be hated by most people" or "Most  
people will hate you"

because of my name

"my name" here refers to Jesus. Alternate translation:

"because of me" or "because you follow me"

Luke 21:18

But not a hair from your head will perish

Jesus speaks of one of the smallest parts of a person. He is  
emphasizing that the whole person will not perish. Jesus  
had already said that some of them would be put to death,  
so some understand this to mean that they would not be  
harmled spiritually. Alternate translation: "But these things  
cannot really harm you" or "Even every hair on your head  
will be safe"

Luke 21:19

In your endurance

"By holding firm." This can be stated in the opposite way.  
Alternate translation: "If you do not quit"

you will gain your lives

"you will save yourselves"

Luke 21:20

Jerusalem surrounded by armies

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
"armies surrounding Jerusalem"

that its desolation is near

The word "desolation," which describes a place that is  
empty, is a metonym for Jerusalem after it has been  
destroyed and the Jews can no longer live there. Alternate  
translation: "that it will soon be destroyed" or "that they  
will soon destroy it"

Luke 21:21

flee

run away from danger

in the country

This refers to the rural areas outside Jerusalem, and not to  
the nation. Alternate translation: "outside the city"

enter the city

"enter Jerusalem"

Luke 21:22

these are days of vengeance

"these are days of punishment" or "this will be the time  
when God will punish this city"

all the things that are written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all  
the things that the prophets wrote in the scriptures long  
ago"

will be fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"will happen"

Luke 21:23

to those who are nursing

"to mothers who are nursing their babies"

there will be great distress upon the land

Possible meanings are 1) the people of the land will be  
distressed or 2) there will be physical disasters in the land.

wrath to this people

"there will be wrath to the people at that time." God will  
bring this wrath. Alternate translation: "this people will  
experience God's anger" or "God will be very angry and will  
punish this people"

Luke 21:24

They will fall by the edge of the sword

"They will be killed by the edge of the sword." Here "fall by  
the edge of the sword" represents being killed by enemy  
soldiers. Alternate translation: "Enemy soldiers will kill  
them"

they will be led captive into all the nations

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
"their enemies will capture them and take them to other  
countries"

into all the nations

The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize that they  
will be led into many countries. Alternate translation: "into  
many other countries"

Jerusalem will be trampled by the Gentiles

Possible meanings are 1) the Gentiles will conquer  
Jerusalem and occupy it or 2) the Gentiles will destroy the  
city of Jerusalem or 3) the Gentiles will destroy the people  
of Jerusalem.

trampled by the Gentiles

This metaphor speaks of Jerusalem as if the people of other  
nations was walking on it and crushing it down with their  
feet. This refers to domination. Alternate translation:  
"conquered by the Gentiles" or "destroyed by the other  
nations"

the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the  
period of the Gentiles has come to an end"

Luke 21:25

The nations will be in distress

Here "the nations" refers to the people in them. Alternate  
translation: "The people of the nations will be distressed"

distress, anxious because of the roar of the sea and waves

"distress because they will be anxious about the roar of the  
sea and its waves" or "distress, and the loud noise of the sea  
and its rough movements will frighten them." This seems to  
refer to unusual storms or disasters involving the seas.

Luke 21:26

the things which are coming upon the world

"the things that will happen in the world" or "the things  
that will happen to the world"

the powers of the heavens will be shaken

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "God will shake the sun, moon, and stars so they will not move in their normal ways" or 2) "God will trouble the powerful spirits in the heavens." The first is recommended. Luke 21:27

Son of Man coming

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "me, the Son Man, coming"

coming in a cloud

"coming down in a cloud"

with power and great glory

Here "power" probably refers to his authority to judge the world. Here "glory" may refer to a bright light. God sometimes shows his greatness with a very bright light. Alternate translation: "powerfully and gloriously" or "and he will be powerful and very glorious"

Luke 21:28

stand up

Sometimes when people are afraid, they crouch down in order to avoid being seen or hurt. When they are no longer afraid, they get up. Alternate translation: "stand up with confidence"

lift up your heads

Lifting the head is a metonym for looking up. When they lift their heads up, they will be able to see their rescuer coming to them. Alternate translation: "look up"

because your redemption is coming near

God, who redeems, is spoken of as if he were the redemption that he causes. The word "redemption" is an abstract noun that can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "because God will soon redeem you"

redemption

God rescuing his people from those who want to harm them is spoken of as if he were buying back people who had become slaves because they could not pay their debts. Alternate translation: "rescue" or "salvation"

Luke 21:29

Connecting Statement:

As Jesus continues teaching his disciples, he tells them a parable.

Luke 21:30

When they sprout buds

"When new leaves start to grow"

summer is already near

"summer is about to start." Summer in Israel follows the sprouting of fig tree leaves and is the time when the figs ripen. Alternate translation: "harvest time is ready to start" Luke 21:31

So also, when you see these things happening

The appearance of the signs that Jesus just described signal the arrival of the kingdom of God just as appearance of the leaves of the fig tree signal the arrival of summer.

the kingdom of God is near

"God will soon establish his kingdom." Alternate translation: "God will soon rule as king"

Luke 21:32

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching his disciples.

Truly I say to you

This expression emphasizes the importance of what Jesus is about to say.

this generation

Possible meanings are 1) the generation that will see the first of the signs Jesus speaks of or 2) the generation Jesus is speaking to. The first is more likely.

will not pass away until

This could be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "will still be alive when"

Luke 21:33

Heaven and earth will pass away

"Heaven and earth will cease to exist." The word "heaven" here refers to the sky and the universe beyond it.

my words will never pass away

"my words will never cease to exist" or "my words will never fail." Jesus uses "words" here to refer to everything he says.

will never pass away

This could be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "will remain forever"

Luke 21:34

so that your hearts are not burdened

The "heart" here refers to the mind and thoughts of the person. Alternate translation: "so that you are not occupied"

are not burdened

Jesus here speaks of the following sins as if they were a physical weight that a person had to carry.

excessive drinking ... drunkenness

"drinking too much wine and becoming drunk." Excessive drinking is the action, and intoxication is the effect of that action.

the worries of life

"the things you worry about as you live every day"

that day does not close on you suddenly

The rest of this sentence, "like a trap," is in verse 35. Just as a trap closes on an animal when the animal does not expect it, that day will happen when people do not expect it.

Alternate translation: "that day does not happen when you are not expecting it, as when a trap closes suddenly on an animal" or "that day does not surprise you like a trap"

that day

This refers to the day when the Messiah returns. Alternate translation: "the day when the Son of Man comes"

Luke 21:35

like a trap

The first part of this statement, "that day does not close on you suddenly," is in verse 34. Just as a trap closes on an animal when the animal does not expect it, that day will happen when people do not expect it. Alternate translation: "that day does not happen when you are not expecting it, as when a trap closes suddenly on an animal" or "that day does not surprise you like a trap"

it will come upon everyone

"it will affect everyone" or "the events of that day will affect everyone"

on the face of the whole earth

The surface of the earth is spoken of as if it were the

outward part of the face of a person. Alternate translation: "on the surface of the whole earth" or "on the entire earth"

Luke 21:36

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching his disciples.

be alert

"be ready for my coming"

strong enough to escape all these things

Possible meanings are 1) "strong enough to endure these things" or 2) "able to avoid these things."

these things that will take place

"these things that will happen." Jesus has just told them about terrible things that will happen, such as persecution, war, and captivity.

to stand before the Son of Man

"to stand with confidence before the Son of Man." This probably refers to when the Son of Man judges everyone. A person who is not ready will be afraid of the Son of Man and will not stand with confidence.

Luke 21:37

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story that begins in [Luke

20:1]

during the days he was teaching

"during the daytime he would teach" or "he would teach each day." The following verses tell about things that Jesus and the people did each day during the week before he died.

in the temple

Only priests were allowed in the temple. Alternate translation: "at the temple" or "in the temple courtyard"

at night he went out

"at night he would go out of the city" or "he went out each night"

Luke 21:38

All of the people

The word "all" is probably an exaggeration to emphasize that the crowd was very large. Alternate translation: "A very large number of people in the city" or "Almost everyone in the city"

came early in the morning

"would come early each morning"

to hear him in the temple

"to hear him teach in the temple courtyard"

---

## Chapter 22

# Luke 22 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

The eating of the body and blood

[Luke 22:19-20](#) describes Jesus's last meal with his followers. At that time, Jesus told them that what they were eating and drinking were his body and his blood. Nearly all Christian churches celebrate "the Lord's Supper," the "Eucharist," or "Holy Communion" to remember this meal.

The new covenant

Some people think that Jesus established the new covenant during the supper. Others think he established it after he went up to heaven. Others think it will not be established until Jesus comes again. Your translation should say no more about this than the ULB does. (See: covenant)

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

## Links:

[Luke 22:1 Notes](#)

---

Luke 22:1

General Information:

Judas agrees to betray Jesus. These verses give background information about this event.

Now

This word is used here to introduce a new event.

Festival of Unleavened Bread

The festival was called by this name because during the festival the Jews did not eat bread that was made with yeast. Alternate translation: "festival when they would eat unleavened bread"

was approaching

"was almost ready to begin"

Luke 22:2

seeking how

"looking for an opportunity" or "thinking of ways in which" they could put Jesus to death

The priests and scribes did not have the authority to kill Jesus themselves, but they hoped to get others to kill him. Alternate translation: "they could get someone to put Jesus to death" or "they could get someone to kill Jesus"

afraid of the people

Possible meanings are 1) "scared of what the people might do" or 2) "scared that the people would make Jesus king."

Luke 22:3

General Information:

This is the beginning of the action in this part of the story.

Satan entered into Judas, the one called Iscariot

What happened might have been similar to demon possession, but other demon-possessed people are obviously unable to control any of their own actions. Here Judas Iscariot seems to do everything he desires, but Satan was somehow at work in a special way. Whatever the intended meaning, Satan "entering" Judas Iscariot is a

metaphor for Satan taking control of Judas Iscariot.  
Alternate translation: "Satan took control of Judas, the one called Iscariot"

Luke 22:4

chief priests

"the leaders of the priests"

captains

officers of the temple guards

how he would betray Jesus to them

"how he would help them arrest Jesus"

Luke 22:5

They were glad

"The chief priests and captains were glad"

to give him money

"to give Judas money"

Luke 22:6

He consented

"He agreed"

looked for an opportunity to give him over to them away from the crowd

This is an ongoing action that continues after this part of the story ends.

away from the crowd

"privately" or "when there was no crowd around him"

Luke 22:7

General Information:

Jesus sends Peter and John to prepare for the Passover meal. This verse gives background information about the event.

the day of unleavened bread

"the day of bread without yeast." This was the day the Jews would take all bread made with yeast out of their homes.

Then they would celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days.

the Passover lamb had to be sacrificed

Each family or group of people would kill a lamb and eat it together, so many lambs were killed. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people had to kill a lamb for their Passover meal"

Luke 22:8

prepare

This is a general word meaning "make ready." Jesus was not necessarily telling Peter and John to do all the cooking.

so that we may eat it

Jesus was including Peter and John when he said "we."

Peter and John would be part of the group of the disciples that would eat the meal.

Luke 22:9

you want us to make preparations

The word "us" does not include Jesus. Jesus would not be part of the group that would prepare the meal.

make preparations

"make preparations for the meal" or "prepare the meal"

Luke 22:10

He answered them

"Jesus answered Peter and John"

Look

Jesus used this word to tell them to pay close attention and to do exactly what he tells them.

a man bearing a pitcher of water will meet you

"you will see a man carrying a pitcher of water"

bearing a pitcher of water

"carrying a jar with water in it." He probably would be carrying the jar on his shoulder.

Follow him into the house

"Follow him, and go into the house"

Luke 22:11

The Teacher says to you, "Where is the guest room, where I ... my disciples?"

The quote beginning with "Where is the guest room" is a direct quote of what Jesus, the teacher, wants to say to the master of his house. It can be translated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Our teacher asks where the guest room is in which he ... his disciples." or "Our teacher says to show us the guest room where he ... us and the rest of his disciples."

The Teacher

This refers to Jesus.

eat the Passover

"eat the Passover meal"

Luke 22:12

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues giving instructions to Peter and John.

He will show you

"The owner of the house will show you"

upper room

"room upstairs." If your community does not have houses with rooms above other rooms, you may need to consider how to describe buildings in the city.

Luke 22:13

So they went

"So Peter and John went"

Luke 22:14

Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in the part of the story about the Passover. Jesus and his disciples are sitting to eat the Passover meal.

When the hour came

"When it was time to eat the meal"

he sat down

"Jesus sat down"

Luke 22:15

I have greatly desired

"I have wanted very much"

before I suffer

Jesus is referring ahead to his death. The word for "suffer" here means to go through an unusually difficult or painful experience.

Luke 22:16

For I say to you

Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

until it is fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) until the purpose of the Passover Festival is accomplished. Alternate translation: "until God fulfills it" or "until God completes the purpose of the Passover Festival" or 2) "until we celebrate the final Passover Festival"

Luke 22:17

took a cup

"picked up a cup of wine"

when he had given thanks

"when he had given thanks to God"

he said

"he said to his apostles"

share it among yourselves

They were to share the contents of the cup, and not the cup itself. Alternate translation: "share the wine in the cup among yourselves" or "each of you drink some of the wine from the cup"

Luke 22:18

For I say to you

This phrase is used to emphasize the importance of what Jesus will say next.

fruit of the vine

This refers to the juice that is squeezed from the grapes that grow on grapevines. Wine is made from fermented grape juice.

until the kingdom of God comes

"until God establishes his kingdom" or "until God rules in his kingdom"

Luke 22:19

bread

This bread did not have yeast in it, so it was flat.

he broke it

"he ripped it" or "he tore it." He may have divided it into many pieces or he may have divided it into two pieces and given them to the apostles to divide among themselves. If possible, use an expression that would apply to either situation.

This is my body

Possible meanings are 1) "This bread is my body" and 2)

"This bread represents my body."

my body, which is given for you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "my body, which I will give for you" or "my body, which I will sacrifice for you"

Do this

"Eat this bread"

in remembrance of me

"in order to remember me"

Luke 22:20

This cup

The word "cup" refers to the wine in the cup. Alternate translation: "The wine in this cup" or "This cup of wine"

the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you

Here "blood, which is poured out" represents death. Jesus's death will establish the new covenant that God will make with his people. Alternate translation: "the new covenant that God will put into effect because I have shed my blood for you"

Luke 22:21

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to his apostles.

The hand of the one who betrays me

The hand here is a synecdoche that refers to the whole person. Jesus speaks of Judas betraying him as if it has

already happened. Alternate translation: "The person who is about to betray me" or "The man who is ready to betray me"

Luke 22:22

For the Son of Man indeed goes

"For, indeed, the Son of Man will go" or "For the Son of Man will die"

the Son of Man indeed goes

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, indeed go"

as it has been determined

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as God has determined" or "as God has planned"

But woe to that man through whom he is betrayed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"But woe to the man who betrays the Son of Man" or "But how terrible it will be for that man who betrays the Son of Man"

Luke 22:23

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 22:24

Then there arose also a quarrel among them

"Then the apostles began to argue among themselves"

was considered to be greatest

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"was the most important" or "the people thought was most important"

Luke 22:25

He said to them

"Jesus said to the apostles"

are lords over them

"rule forcefully over the Gentiles"

are called

Their people probably did not think that those rulers did good to them. Alternate translation: "like to be called" or

"call themselves"

Luke 22:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching his apostles.

it must not be like this with you

"you should not act like that"

the youngest

Older people were respected in that culture. The leaders were usually older people and were called "elders." The youngest person would be the least likely to lead, and the least important. Alternate translation: "the least important" and the one who leads like the one who serves

Words from the phrase before this apply to this phrase.

Alternate translation: "and let the one who leads become like the one who serves"

the one who serves

"a servant"

Luke 22:27

For

This connects Jesus's commands in verse 26 with this whole verse. It means that the most important person should serve because Jesus is a servant.

For who is greater ... serves?

"For who is more important ... serves?" Jesus uses this question to begin to explain to the apostles who is truly great. Alternate translation: "I want you to think about who is greater ... serves."

the one who sits at the table  
"the one who is dining"

Is it not the one who sits at the table?

Jesus uses another question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: "Of course the one who sits at the table is more important than the servant!"

Yet I am among you as one who serves

"But I am with you to be a servant" or "But I am with you to show you how a servant acts." The word "yet" is here because there is a contrast between what people would expect Jesus to be like and what he really was like.

Luke 22:28

have continued with me in my trials

"have stayed with me as I have struggled" or "have stayed with me while Satan has tempted me"

Luke 22:29

I set you over a kingdom, even as my Father has set me over a kingdom  
Some languages may need to change the order. Alternate translation: "Just as my father has given a kingdom to me, I give a kingdom to you"

I set you over a kingdom

"I make you rulers in God's kingdom" or "I give you authority to rule in the kingdom" or "I will make you kings" even as my Father has set me over a kingdom

"just as my Father has given me authority to rule as king in his kingdom"

Luke 22:30

you will sit on thrones

Kings sit on thrones. Sitting on a throne is a symbol of ruling. Alternate translation: "you will work as kings" or "you will do the work of kings"

Luke 22:31

General Information:

Jesus speaks directly to Simon.

Simon, Simon

Jesus said his name twice to show that what he was about to say to him was very important.

to have you, that he might sift you

The word "you" refers to all of the apostles. Languages that have different forms of "you" should use the plural form.

sift you as wheat

This means that Satan wanted to test the disciples to find something wrong. Alternate translation: "test you like someone passes grain through a sieve"

Luke 22:32

But I have prayed for you

The word "you" here refers specifically to Simon.

Languages that have different forms of "you" should use the singular form.

that your faith may not fail

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "that you will continue to have faith" or "that you will continue to trust me"

After you have turned back again

Here "turned back again" is a metaphor for starting to

believe in someone again. Alternate translation: "After you start believing in me again" or "After you start serving me again"

strengthen your brothers

"encourage your brothers to be strong in their faith" or "help your brothers believe in me"

your brothers

This refers to the other disciples. Alternate translation:

"your fellow believers" or "the other disciples"

Luke 22:33

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 22:34

the rooster will not crow this day before you deny three times that you know me

The order of the parts of the verse can be reversed.

Alternate translation: "you will deny three times that you know me before the rooster crows this day"

the rooster will not crow this day before you deny

This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "the rooster will crow this day only after you deny" or "before the rooster crows today, you will deny"

the rooster will not crow

Here, the crowing of the rooster refers to a certain time of day. Roosters often crow just before the sun appears in the morning. Therefore, this refers to dawn.

rooster

a bird that calls out loudly around the time the sun comes up

this day

The Jewish day begins at sunset. Jesus was speaking after the sun had set. The rooster would crow just before morning. The morning was part of "this day." Alternate translation: "tonight" or "in the morning"

Luke 22:35

Connecting Statement:

Jesus turns his attention back to speaking to all of his disciples.

Jesus said to them, "When ... did you lack anything?" They answered, "Nothing."

Jesus uses a question to help the apostles remember how well the people provided for them as they traveled. Though this is a rhetorical question and Jesus is not asking for information, you should translate it as a question unless only a statement would cause the disciples to reply that they had lacked nothing.

When I sent you out

Jesus is talking to his apostles, so the word "you" is plural.

purse

A purse is a bag for holding money. Here it is used to refer to "money."

a bag of provisions

"travelers' bag" or "bag of food"

Nothing

It may be helpful to some audiences to include more about the conversation. Alternate translation: "We did not lack anything" or "We had everything we needed"

Luke 22:36

and likewise a bag of provisions

"and let him also take a bag of provisions" or "and also a bag of provisions"

The one who does not have a sword should sell his cloak  
Jesus was not referring to a specific person who did not have a sword. Alternate translation: "If anyone does not have a sword, he should sell his cloak"

cloak

"coat" or "outer garment"

Luke 22:37

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking with his disciples.

what is written about me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"what a prophet wrote about me in the scriptures"

must be fulfilled

The apostles would have understood that God would cause everything written in the scriptures to happen. Alternate translation: "God will fulfill" or "God will cause to happen"

He was counted with the lawless ones

Here Jesus is quoting the scriptures. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People counted him as a member of the group of lawless men"

the lawless ones

"those who break the law" or "the criminals"

For what is predicted about me is being fulfilled

Possible meanings are 1) "For what the prophet predicted about me is about to happen" or 2) "For my life is coming to an end"

Luke 22:38

they said

This refers to at least two of Jesus's apostles.

It is enough

Possible meanings are 1) they have enough swords. "We now have enough swords." or 2) Jesus wants them to stop talking about having swords. "No more of this talk about swords."

Luke 22:39

General Information:

Jesus goes to the Mount of Olives to pray.

Luke 22:40

that you do not enter into temptation

"that you are not tempted" or "that nothing tempts you and causes you to sin"

Luke 22:41

about a stone's throw

"about the distance that someone can throw a stone."

Alternate translation: "a short distance" or with an estimated measurement like "about thirty meters"

Luke 22:42

Father, if you are willing

Jesus will bear the guilt of every person's sin on the cross.

He prays to his Father, asking if there is another way.

Father

This is an important title for God.

remove this cup from me

Jesus refers to what he will soon experience as if it were a cup of bitter liquid that he would have to drink. Alternate translation: "allow me to not drink from this cup" or "allow me to not experience what is about to happen"

Nevertheless not my will, but yours be done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"However, do what is according to your will rather than what is according to my will"

Luke 22:43

appeared to him

"appeared to Jesus"

strengthening him

"encouraging him"

Luke 22:44

Being in agony, he prayed

"He was suffering greatly, and so he prayed"

he prayed more earnestly

"he prayed more intensely"

his sweat became like great drops of blood falling down upon the ground

"his sweat was falling to the ground like large drops of blood"

Luke 22:45

When he rose up from his prayer, he

"When Jesus got up after praying, he" or "After praying, Jesus got up and he"

found them sleeping because of their sorrow

"saw that they were sleeping because they were tired from their sadness"

Luke 22:46

Why are you sleeping?

Possible meanings are 1) "I am surprised that you are sleeping now." or 2) "You should not be sleeping now!"

that you may not enter into temptation

"so that you may not be tempted" or "so that nothing tempts you and causes you to sin"

Luke 22:47

behold, a crowd appeared

The word "behold" alerts us to a new group in the story.

Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "there was a crowd that appeared"

leading them

Judas was showing the people where Jesus was. He was not telling the crowd what to do. Alternate translation: "leading them to Jesus"

to kiss him

"to greet him with a kiss" or "to greet him by kissing him."

When men greeted other men who were family or friends, they would kiss them on one cheek or both cheeks. If your readers would find it embarrassing to say that a man would kiss another man, you could translate it in a more general way: "to give him a friendly greeting."

Luke 22:48

are you betraying the Son of Man with a kiss?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke Judas for betraying him

with a kiss. Normally a kiss is a sign of love. Alternate translation: "it is a kiss you are using to betray the Son of Man!"

the Son of Man with

Jesus is using this term to refer to himself. Alternate

translation: "me, the Son of Man, with"

Luke 22:49

those who were around Jesus

This refers to Jesus's disciples.  
 what was happening  
 This refers to the priests and soldiers coming to arrest Jesus.  
 strike with the sword  
 The question is about the type of fight they should engage in  
 Luke 22:50  
 one of them  
 "one of the disciples"  
 struck the servant of the high priest  
 "struck the servant of the high priest with a sword"  
 Luke 22:51  
 That is enough  
 "Do not do any more of that"  
 touched his ear  
 "touched the servant where his ear had been cut off"  
 Luke 22:52  
 Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs?  
 "Do you come out with swords and clubs because you think I am a robber?" Jesus uses this question to scold the Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: "You know that I am not a robber, yet you come out to me bringing swords and clubs."  
 Luke 22:53  
 I was daily with you  
 "I was among you every day"  
 in the temple  
 Only priests entered the temple. Alternate translation: "in the temple courts" or "at the temple"  
 lay your hands on me  
 In this verse, to lay hands on someone is to arrest that person. Alternate translation: "arrest me"  
 this is your hour  
 "this is the time for you to do whatever you want"  
 the authority of darkness  
 It may be helpful to repeat the reference to time.  
 "Darkness" is a metonym for Satan. Alternate translation: "the time of the authority of darkness" or "the time when God is allowing Satan to do whatever he wants"  
 Luke 22:54  
 led him away  
 "led Jesus away from the garden where they had arrested him"  
 into the high priest's house  
 "into the courtyard of the high priest's house"  
 Luke 22:55  
 they had kindled a fire  
 "some people had made a fire." The fire was to keep the people warm during the cool night. Alternate translation: "some people started a fire to keep warm"  
 the middle of the courtyard  
 This was the courtyard at the high priest's house. It had walls around it, but no roof.  
 in the midst of them  
 "together with them"  
 Luke 22:56  
 he sat in the light of the fire  
 He sat near the fire and its line shone on him.  
 and looked straight at him and said

"and she looked straight at Peter and said to the other people in the courtyard"  
 This man also was with him  
 The woman was telling the people about Peter being with Jesus. She probably did not know Peter's name.  
 Luke 22:57  
 But Peter denied it  
 "But Peter said that it was not true"  
 Woman, I do not know him  
 Peter did not know the woman's name. He was not insulting her by calling her "woman." If people would think he was insulting her, you could use a culturally acceptable way for a man to address a woman he does not know, or you could leave out the word.  
 Luke 22:58  
 You are also one of them  
 "You are also one of those who were with Jesus"  
 Man, I am not  
 Peter did not know the man's name. He was not insulting him by calling him "Man." If people would think he was insulting him, you could use a culturally acceptable way for a man to address a man he does not know, or you could leave out the word.  
 Luke 22:59  
 insisted and said  
 "said insistently" or "said loudly"  
 Truly this man  
 Here "this man" refers to Peter. The speaker probably did not know Peter's name.  
 he is a Galilean  
 The man could probably tell Peter was from Galilee from the way he talked.  
 Luke 22:60  
 Man  
 Peter did not know the man's name. He was not insulting him by calling him "Man." If people would think he was insulting him, you could use a culturally acceptable way for a man to address a man he does not know, or you could leave out the word. See how you translated this in Luke 22:58.  
 I do not know what you are saying  
 "I do not know what you are talking about." This expression means that Peter completely disagrees with the man.  
 Alternate translation: "what you said is not true at all" or "what you said is completely false"  
 while he was speaking  
 "while Peter was speaking"  
 a rooster crowed  
 Roosters often crow just before the sun appears in the morning. See how you translated a similar phrase in Luke 22:34.  
 Luke 22:61  
 Turning, the Lord looked at Peter  
 "The Lord turned and looked at Peter"  
 the word of the Lord  
 "what Jesus had said" when Jesus had said that Peter would betray Jesus  
 a rooster crows  
 Roosters often crow just before the sun appears in the



morning. See how you translated a similar phrase in Luke 22:34.

today

The Jewish day started at sundown and continued to the next evening. Jesus had spoken the previous evening about what would happen shortly before dawn or at dawn.

Alternate translation: "tonight"

deny me three times

"deny three times that you know me"

Luke 22:62

Peter went outside

"Peter went out of the courtyard"

Luke 22:63

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 22:64

They put a cover over him

"They covered his eyes so that he could not see"

Prophecy! Who is the one who hit you?

The guards did not believe that Jesus was a prophet. Rather, they believed that a real prophet would know who hit him even if he could not see. They called Jesus a prophet, but they were teasing him and showing him why they did not think that he was a prophet. Alternate translation: "Prove that you are a prophet. Tell us who hit you!" or "Hey prophet, who hit you?"

Prophecy!

"Speak words from God!" The implied information is that God would have to tell Jesus who struck him since Jesus was blindfolded and could not see.

Luke 22:65

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 22:66

General Information:

It is now the next day and Jesus is brought before the council.

As soon as it was day

"At dawn the next morning"

They led him into the Council

Possible meanings are 1) "The elders had Jesus brought into the Council" or 2) "The guards led Jesus into the council of the elders." Some languages may avoid saying who led him by using the pronoun "they" or by using a passive verb: "Jesus was led into the council"

Luke 22:67

and said

A new sentence can be started here if a period is put at the end of the previous verse. Alternate translation: "The elders

said to Jesus"

If you are the Christ, tell us

"Tell us if you are the Christ"

If I tell you, you will not believe

This was a way for Jesus to respond without giving them a reason to say that he was guilty of blasphemy. Alternate translation: "If I tell you, you will not believe me"

Luke 22:68

if I ask you, you will not answer

This was a way for Jesus to rebuke them without giving them a reason to convict him. These words, along with "If I tell you, you will not believe" (verse 67), show that Jesus did not believe that the council really wanted to know the truth.

Luke 22:69

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the council.

from now on

"from this day" or "starting from today"

the Son of Man will

Jesus uses this phrase to refer to himself. Alternate

translation: "I, the Son of Man, will"

seated at the right hand of the power of God

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "seated in the place of honor beside the power of God"

the power of God

"the all-powerful God." Here "power" refers to his supreme authority.

Luke 22:70

Then you are the Son of God?

The council asked this question because they wanted Jesus to explicitly confirm their understanding that he was saying he was the Son of God. Alternate translation: "So when you said that, did you mean that you are the Son of God?"

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

You say that I am

"Yes, it is just like you say"

Luke 22:71

Why do we still need a witness?

They use a question for emphasis. Alternate translation: "We have no further need for witnesses!"

heard from his own mouth

The phrase "his own mouth" refers to his speech. Alternate translation: "heard him say himself that he was the Son of God"

---

## Chapter 23

# Luke 23 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

The ULB sets the last line of this chapter apart because it is more connected with chapter 24 than with chapter 23.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Accuse

The chief priests and scribes accused Jesus of doing evil because they wanted Pilate to kill Jesus. But they were accusing him falsely, because Jesus had never done what they accused him of doing.

"The curtain of the temple was split in two"

The curtain in the temple was an important symbol that showed that people needed to have someone speak to God for them. They could not speak to God directly because all people are sinful and God hates sin. God split the curtain to show that Jesus's people can now speak to God directly because Jesus has paid for their sins.

The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried ([Luke 23:53](#)) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"I find no fault in this man"

Pilate was saying that he did not know of any reason why he should punish Jesus: Jesus had not broken any laws. Pilate was not saying that Jesus was perfect.

Links:

[Luke 23:1 Notes](#)

Luke 23:1

General Information:

Jesus is brought before Pilate.

The whole company of them

"All of the Jewish leaders" or "All the members of the Council"

rose up

This is an idiom that means that they began to act decisively.

before Pilate

To appear before someone means to enter into their authority. Alternate translation: "to be judged by Pilate"

Luke 23:2

We found

"We" refers only the Council members, and not to Pilate of any other people nearby.

misleading our nation

"causing our people to do things that are not right" or

"causing trouble by telling lies to our people"

forbidding to give tribute

"telling them not to pay taxes"

to Caesar

Caesar represents the Emperor of Rome. Alternate translation: "to the Emperor"

Luke 23:3

Pilate asked him

"Pilate asked Jesus"

You say so

Possible meanings are 1) by saying this, Jesus implied that he is the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "Yes, as you said, I am" or "Yes. It is as you said" or 2) by saying this, Jesus was saying that Pilate, not Jesus, was the one calling him the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "You yourself have said so"

Luke 23:4

multitudes

large groups of people

I find no guilt in this man

"I do not find this man guilty of anything"

Luke 23:5

stirs up

"causes trouble among"

all Judea, beginning from Galilee even to this place

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "all Judea. He began causing trouble in Galilee and now is causing trouble here"

Luke 23:6

heard this

"heard that Jesus began to teach in Galilee"

he asked whether the man was a Galilean

Pilate wanted to know from which area Jesus came because he wanted to have a lower-ranking government official judge Jesus. If Jesus were from Galilee, Pilate could have Herod judge Jesus because Herod had authority over Galilee.

the man

This refers to Jesus.

Luke 23:7

he learned

"Pilate found out"

he was under Herod's authority

The passage does not state the implied fact that Herod was the ruler of Galilee. Alternate translation: "Jesus was under the authority of Herod because Herod ruled over Galilee"

he sent

"Pilate sent"

who himself

This refers to Herod.

in those days

"at that time"

Luke 23:8

he was very glad

"Herod was very glad"

he had wanted to see him

"Herod had wanted to see Jesus"

He had heard about him

"Herod had heard about Jesus"

he hoped to see some sign done by him

Here the word "hope" means to expect that something one desires might happen. Alternate translation: "Herod expected that he might see some sign done by him"

to see some sign done by him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to see him do some kind of sign" or "that he might see Jesus do

some sign"

sign

a miracle that would show that Jesus was more than a mere man

Luke 23:9

Herod questioned Jesus in many words

"Herod asked Jesus a lot of questions"

answered him nothing

"did not reply" or "did not give Herod an answer"

Luke 23:10

the scribes stood

"the scribes were standing there"

vigorously accusing him

They were showing great anger and using strong words and accusing him of many things.

Luke 23:11

Herod with his soldiers

"Herod and his soldiers"

dressed him in splendid clothes

"put beautiful clothes on him." The translation should not imply that this was done to honor or care for Jesus. They did it to mock Jesus and to make fun of him.

Luke 23:12

Herod and Pilate had become friends with each other that very day

The implied information is that they became friends because Herod appreciated Pilate allowing him to judge Jesus. Alternate translation: "Herod and Pilate became friends with each other that very day because Pilate had sent Jesus to Herod for judgment"

before this they had been enemies with each other

This information is enclosed in parentheses to show that it is background information. Use a format that your audience would understand.

Luke 23:13

called together the chief priests and the rulers and the crowd of people

"called the chief priests and the rulers and the crowd of people to come meet together"

the crowd of people

It is not likely that Pilate asked a crowd to come. The crowd was probably still there waiting to see what would happen to Jesus. Alternate translation: "the crowd that was still there"

Luke 23:14

this man

This refers to Jesus.

like a man who

"saying that he"

misleading the people

"urging the people to act badly" or "trying to get the people to rebel against the government"

I, having questioned him before you,

"I have questioned Jesus in your presence and." It is implied that they were witnesses to the proceedings. Alternate translation: "I have questioned Jesus with you here as witnesses, and I"

find no guilt in this man

"do not think that he is guilty"

Luke 23:15

Connecting Statement:

Pilate continues speaking to the Jewish leaders and to the crowd.

No, nor does Herod

We can understand what Herod did not do from what Pilate said about himself in verse 14. Alternate translation: "Nor does Herod find guilt in this man" or "Even Herod thinks he is innocent"

nor does Herod, for

"nor does Herod, because" or "nor does Herod. We know this because"

he sent him back to us

"Herod sent Jesus to return to us." The word "us" refers to Pilate, his soldiers, and the priests and scribes, but not those who were listening to Pilate.

nothing worthy of death has been done by him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he has not done anything to deserve a death sentence"

Luke 23:16

I will therefore punish him

Because Pilate had found no fault in Jesus he should have released him without punishment. It is not necessary to try to make this statement fit logically into the translation. Pilate punished Jesus, whom he knew to be innocent, only because he was afraid of the crowd.

Luke 23:17

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 23:18

General Information:

Verse 19 tells us background information about who Barabbas is.

they cried out all together

"all the people in the crowd shouted"

Away with this man, and release

"Take this man away! Release." They are asking him to have his soldiers kill Jesus. Alternate translation: "Take this man away and execute him! Release"

release to us

"us" refers to the crowd only, and not to Pilate and his soldiers.

Luke 23:19

Barabbas was a man ... for murder

This is background information that Luke gives about who Barabbas was.

who had been put into prison

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"whom the Romans had put in prison"

a certain rebellion in the city

"trying to persuade the people of the city to rebel against the Roman government"

Luke 23:20

addressed them again

"spoke to them again" or "spoke again to the people in the crowd and to the religious rulers"

desiring to release Jesus

"because he wanted to set Jesus free"

Luke 23:21

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 23:22

He said to them a third time

"Pilate said to the crowd again, for the third time"

what evil has this man done?

Pilate uses this question to cause the crowd to understand that Jesus is innocent. Alternate translation: "this man has not done anything wrong!"

I have found no guilt deserving death in him

"I have not learned of anything he has done for which I should put him to death"

after punishing him, I will release him

As in Luke 23:16, Pilate should have released Jesus without punishment because he was innocent. However, he offered to punish Jesus to appease the crowd.

I will release him

"I will set him free"

Luke 23:23

they were insistent

"the crowd insisted"

with loud voices

"with shouting"

for him to be crucified

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for Pilate to have his soldiers crucify Jesus"

Their voices convinced Pilate

"The crowd kept shouting until they convinced Pilate"

Luke 23:24

to grant their demand

"to do what the crowd requested"

Luke 23:25

He released the one they asked for

Pilate released Barrabas from prison. Alternate translation:

"Pilate freed Barabbas, whom the crowd had asked be released"

who had been put in prison ... murder

This is background information about where Barrabas was at that time. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the Romans had put in prison ... murder"

he delivered up Jesus to their will

"Pilate commanded the soldiers to bring Jesus to them to do whatever the crowd wanted to do"

Luke 23:26

As they led him away

"While the soldiers led Jesus away from where Pilate was" seized

The Roman soldiers had the authority to compel people to carry their loads. Do not translate this in a way that indicates that Simon was arrested or had done anything wrong.

one Simon of Cyrene

"a man named Simon, from the city of Cyrene"

coming from the country

"who was coming into Jerusalem from the countryside"

laid the cross on him

"put the cross on his shoulders"

following Jesus

"and he followed behind Jesus"

Luke 23:27

A great crowd

"A large crowd"

great crowd of the people, and of women

The women were part of the large crowd, and not a separate crowd.

mourned for him

"mourned for Jesus"

were following him

This does not mean that they were Jesus's disciples. It simply means they were walking along behind him.

Luke 23:28

turning to them

This indicates that Jesus turned to face the women and address them directly.

Daughters of Jerusalem

The "daughter" of a city means the women of the city. This was not rude. It was a normal form of address to a group of women from one location. Alternate translation: "You women who are from Jerusalem"

do not weep for me, but weep for yourselves and for your children

The person is a metonym for what happens to the person.

Alternate translation: "do not weep about the bad things that will happen to me. Instead, weep because worse things will happen to you and to your children" or "you are weeping because bad things are happening to me, but you will weep even more when worse things happen to you and your children"

Luke 23:29

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking to the crowd.

For see

This introduces the reason why the women of Jerusalem should weep for themselves.

the days are coming

"there will soon be a time"

in which they will say

"when people will say"

the barren

"women who have not given birth to children"

the wombs that did not bear ... the breasts that did not nurse

These clauses are used to more fully describe "the barren."

Those women neither gave birth nor nursed children. It may be helpful to combine these together with "the barren." Alternate translation: "the women who have never given birth to children or nursed babies"

they

This can refer to either the Romans or the Jewish leaders, or to people in general.

Luke 23:30

Then

at that time

to the hills

Words are left out to keep the phrase short. Alternate translation: "they will say to the hills"

Luke 23:31

For if they do these things while the tree is green, what will happen when it is dry?

Jesus uses a question to help the crowd understand that people are doing bad things now in good times, so certainly

they will do worse things in the bad times in the future.  
Alternate translation: "You can see that they are doing these bad things while the tree is green, so you can be sure that they will do worse things when the tree is dry."

the tree is green

The green tree is a metaphor for something that is good. If your language has a similar metaphor, you should use it here.

it is dry

The dry wood is a metaphor for something that will be useful only to burn.

Luke 23:32

Other men, two criminals, were led away with him to be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"The soldiers led away with Jesus two criminals to execute them also"

Other men, two criminals

"Two other men who were criminals" or "Two criminals."

Luke avoids saying "other criminals" because Jesus was innocent, even though he was treated as a criminal. Luke calls the other two men criminals, but not Jesus.

Luke 23:33

When they came

The word "they" includes the soldiers, the criminals, and Jesus.

they crucified him

"the Roman soldiers crucified Jesus"

one on his right and one on his left

"they crucified one criminal on Jesus's right side and the other criminal on Jesus's left side"

Luke 23:34

Father, forgive them

The word "them" refers to those who were crucifying Jesus. Jesus speaks to his Father with compassion toward the men crucifying him.

Father

This is an important title for God.

for they do not know what they are doing

"because they do not understand what they are doing." The Roman soldiers did not understand that they were crucifying the Son of God. Alternate translation: "for they do not really know whom they are crucifying"

they cast lots

The soldiers participated in a type of gambling. Alternate translation: "they gambled"

cast lots, dividing up his garments

"cast lots to decide who among the soldiers would take home each piece of Jesus's clothing"

Luke 23:35

The people stood

"The people were standing there"

him

This refers to Jesus.

He saved others. Let him save himself

Luke records the ironic words of the rulers. The only way Jesus could save others was by dying instead of saving himself.

Let him save himself

"Jesus should be able to save himself." They said this to

mock Jesus. They did not believe he could save himself.

Alternate translation: "We would like to see him prove who he is by saving himself from the cross"

the chosen one

"the one that God has chosen"

Luke 23:36

him

Jesus

approaching him

"coming close to Jesus"

offering him vinegar

"offering Jesus vinegar to drink." Vinegar is a cheap drink that common people drink. The soldiers were mocking Jesus by giving a cheap drink to someone who claims to be a king.

Luke 23:37

If you are the King of the Jews, save yourself

The soldiers were mocking Jesus. Alternate translation: "We do not believe you are the King of the Jews, but if you are, prove us wrong by saving yourself"

Luke 23:38

a sign over him

"a placard at the top of Jesus's cross that stated"

This is the King of the Jews

The people who put this sign above Jesus were mocking him. They did not really think he was a king.

Luke 23:39

insulted him

"reviled Jesus"

Are you not the Christ? Save yourself

The criminal uses a question to mock Jesus. Alternate translation: "You claim to be the Christ. Save yourself" or "If you really were the Christ, you would save yourself"

Save yourself and us

The criminal did not really think that Jesus could rescue them from the cross.

Luke 23:40

the other rebuked him

"the other criminal rebuked him"

Do you not fear God, since you are under the same sentence of condemnation?

The criminal uses a question to scold the other criminal. Alternate translation: "You should fear God, because you are under the same sentence of condemnation."

you are under the same sentence of condemnation

"the government has condemned you to be punished in the same way"

Luke 23:41

We indeed ... for we ... we deserve

These usages of "we" refer only to the two criminals, and not to Jesus or the other people.

We indeed are here justly

"Truly we deserve this punishment"

this man

This refers to Jesus.

Luke 23:42

Then he said

"The criminal also said"

remember me

"think about me and treat me well"

come into your kingdom

To "come into" a kingdom means to begin to rule. Alternate translation: "begin to rule as king"

Luke 23:43

Truly I say to you, today

"Truly" adds emphasis to what Jesus is saying. Alternate translation: "I want you to know that today"

paradise

This is the place that righteous people go to when they die. Jesus was assuring the man that he would be with God and God would accept him. Alternate translation: "the place where the righteous people live" or "the place where people live well"

Luke 23:44

about the sixth hour

"about noon." This reflects the custom at the time of counting hours beginning with daybreak at 6 a.m.

darkness came over the whole land

"the entire land became dark"

until the ninth hour

"until 3 p.m." This reflects the custom at the time of counting hours beginning with daybreak at 6 a.m.

Luke 23:45

as the sun turned dark

This does not refer to sundown. Rather, the light of the sun turned dark during the middle of the day. Use a term to describe the sun becoming dark rather than the sun going down.

the curtain of the temple

"the curtain inside the temple." This was the curtain that separated the most holy place from the rest of the temple.

the curtain of the temple was split in two

"the curtain of the temple was torn into two pieces." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God tore the temple curtain into two pieces"

Luke 23:46

Crying with a loud voice

"Shouting loudly." It may be helpful to show how this is related to the events of the previous verses. Alternate translation: "When that happened, Jesus shouted loudly"

Father

This is an important title for God.

into your hands I commit my spirit

"The phrase "into your hands" refers to God's care.

Alternate translation: "I entrust my spirit to your care" or "I give my spirit to you, knowing you will care for it"

Having said this

"After Jesus said this"

he died

"Jesus died"

Luke 23:47

the centurion

This was the title for the Roman officer who was in charge of the other Roman soldiers. He supervised the crucifixion.

what was done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all the things that had happened"

this was a righteous man

"this man did nothing wrong" or "this man did not do anything wrong"

Luke 23:48

multitudes

large groups of people

who came together

"who gathered together"

witness this sight

"see this event" or "observe what was happening"

the things that were done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"what had happened"

returned beating

"returned to their homes beating"

beating their breasts

This was a symbol of sorrow and regret. Alternate translation: "hitting their own chests to show that they were sorrowful"

Luke 23:49

followed him

"traveled with Jesus"

at a distance

"some distance away from Jesus"

these things

"what happened"

Luke 23:50

General Information:

The author begins to give background information about the man who buried Jesus's body.

Behold, there was a man

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story.

Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "There was a man who was"

the Council

"the Jewish Council"

Luke 23:51

General Information:

The author finishes giving background information about the man who buried Jesus's body. It may be helpful to reorder some of the information in this verse and the previous verse with a verse bridge, as the UDB does.

with their plan and action

What the decision was can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "with either the Council's decision to kill Jesus or with their action in killing him"

a city of the Jews

"a city in which most people were Jews"

Luke 23:52

This man, approaching Pilate, asked for the body of Jesus

"This man went to Pilate and requested the body of Jesus, to bury it."

Luke 23:53

He took it down

"Joseph took Jesus's body from the cross." He probably had help, so this may be a synecdoche. Alternate translation:

"Joseph and some helpers took it down"

wrapped it in fine linen

"wrapped the body in a fine linen cloth." This was the normal burial custom at that time.

that was cut in stone

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
"which someone had cut in a rock cliff"

where no one had ever been laid

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "No one had ever before put a body in that tomb"

Luke 23:54

the Day of the Preparation

"the day when people got ready for the Jewish day of rest called the Sabbath"

the Sabbath was about to begin

For the Jews, the day began at sunset. Alternate translation:  
"it was soon going to be sunset, the start of the Sabbath"

Luke 23:55

who had come with Jesus out of Galilee

"who had traveled with Jesus from the region of Galilee"

followed and saw the tomb and how his body was laid

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation:

"walked along behind Joseph and the men who were with him; the women saw the tomb and how the men laid Jesus's body inside the tomb"

Luke 23:56

They returned

"The women went to the houses where the women were staying"

prepared spices and ointments

Because they had had no time to honor Jesus by putting fragrant spices and ointments on his body on the day he died, they were going to do it on the morning of the first day of the week. Alternate translation: "prepared spices and ointments to put on Jesus's body"

they rested

"the women did no work"

according to the commandment

"according to the Jewish law" or "as the Jewish law required." According to the law, they were not allowed to prepare his body on the Sabbath.

---

## Chapter 24

# Luke 24 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

### The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried ([Luke 24:1](#)) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

### The faith of the women

Most of Luke's original readers would have thought of women as less important than men, but Luke carefully shows that some women loved Jesus very much and had more faith than the twelve disciples had.

### Resurrection

Luke wants his readers to understand that Jesus came alive again in a physical body ([Luke 24:38-43](#)).

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

### "On the third day"

Jesus told his followers that he would become alive again "on the third day" ([Luke 18:33](#)). He died on a Friday afternoon (before sunset) and became alive again on a Sunday, so he became alive again "on the third day" because the Jews said that the day began and ended at sunset, and they counted any part of the day as a day. Friday was the first day, Saturday was the second day, and Sunday was the third day.

### Two men in bright shining robes

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about angels in white clothing with the women at Jesus's tomb. Two of the authors called them men, but that is only because the angels were in human form. Two of the authors wrote about two angels, but the other two authors wrote about only one of them. It is best to translate each of these passages as it appears in the ULB without trying to make the passages all say exactly the same thing. (See: [Matthew 28:1-2](#) and [Mark 16:5](#) and [Luke 24:4](#) and [John 20:12](#))

## Links:

[Luke 24:1 Notes](#)

---

Luke 24:1

General Information:

The women (Luke 23:55) return to the tomb with spices to put on Jesus's body.

Very early on the first day of the week

"Before dawn on Sunday"

they came to the tomb

"the women arrived at the tomb." These were the women

spoken of in Luke 23:55.

the tomb

This tomb was cut in the rock of a cliff.

bringing the spices

These were the same spices they prepared in Luke 23:56.

Luke 24:2

They found the stone

"They saw that the stone was"

the stone rolled away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that someone had rolled the stone"

the stone

This was a large, cut, round stone big enough to completely block the doorway to the tomb. It required several men to roll it.

Luke 24:3

did not find the body of the Lord Jesus

You can state explicitly that they did not find it because it was not there. Alternate translation: "the body of the Lord Jesus was not there"

Luke 24:4

General Information:

Two angels appear and begin speaking to the women.

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Luke 24:5

were terrified

"became very afraid"

bowed down their faces to the earth

"bowed low to the ground." This action expresses their humility and submission to the men.

Why do you seek the living among the dead?

The men use a question to mildly criticize the women for looking in a tomb for a living person. Alternate translation: "You are looking for a living person among dead people!" or "You should not be looking for someone who is alive in a place where they bury dead people!"

Why do you seek

Here "you" is plural, referring to the women who came.

Luke 24:6

but has been raised

"but he has been made alive again." "Raised" here is an idiom for "caused to live again." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because God has made him alive again"

Remember how

"Remember what"

to you

The word "you" is plural. It refers to the women and possibly the other disciples in addition.

Luke 24:7

Connecting Statement:

The angels finish speaking to the women.

that the Son of Man

This is the beginning of an indirect quote. It can also be translated with a direct quote, as in the UDB.

the Son of Man must be delivered up into the hands of sinful men and be crucified

The phrase "must be" means this is something that would certainly happen because God had already decided that it would happen. This can be translated in active form.

Alternate translation: "it was necessary that they hand the Son of Man over to sinful men who would crucify him"

into the hands

Here "hands" refers to power or control.

third day

The Jews counted any portion of a day as a day. Therefore, the day Jesus was raised was the "third day" because it followed the day of his burial and the Sabbath day.

Luke 24:8

remembered his words

Here "words" refers to the statement that Jesus made.

Alternate translation: "remembered what Jesus said"

Luke 24:9

Connecting Statement:

The women go to tell the apostles about what they found at the tomb.

the eleven and all the rest

"the eleven apostles and all the rest of the disciples who were with them"

the eleven

This is Luke's first reference to the "eleven" because there had always been twelve before. But Judas left the twelve and betrayed Jesus.

Luke 24:10

Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story.

Here Luke gives the names of some of the women who came from the tomb and told the apostles what had happened there.

Luke 24:11

But this message seemed like idle talk to the apostles

"But the apostles thought that what the women said was foolish talk"

Luke 24:12

Yet Peter

This phrase contrasts Peter to the other apostles. He did not dismiss what the women said, but ran to the tomb to see for himself.

rose up

This is an idiom that means "began to act." Whether Peter was sitting or standing when he decided to act is not important. Alternate translation: "started out"

stooping

Peter had to bend over in order to see inside the tomb because tombs cut in solid rock were very low. Alternate translation: "bending himself at the waist"

the linen cloths by themselves

"only the linen cloths." This refers to the cloths that had been wrapped around Jesus's body when he was buried in [Luke 23:53]

departed to his home

"went away to his home"

Luke 24:13

General Information:

Two of the disciples are on their way to Emmaus.

Behold

The author uses this word to mark the beginning of a new event.

two of them

"two of the disciples"

that very day

"that same day." This refers to the day when the women found the tomb to be empty.



Emmaus

This is the name of a town.

sixty stadia

"eleven kilometers." A "stadium" was 185 meters.

Luke 24:14

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 24:15

It happened that

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. It starts with Jesus approaching them. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Jesus himself

The word "himself" emphasizes the fact that the very Jesus they were talking about actually appeared to them. So far the women had seen the angels, but no one had seen Jesus.

Luke 24:16

their eyes were prevented from recognizing him

"their eyes were kept from recognizing Jesus." The men's ability to recognize Jesus is spoken of as their eyes' ability to recognize him. This can be stated in active form. It is most likely that it was God who prevented them from recognizing Jesus. Alternate translation: "something happened to them so they could not recognize him" or "God prevented them from recognizing him"

Luke 24:17

Jesus said to them

"Jesus said to the two men"

Luke 24:18

Cleopas

This is the name of a man.

Are you the only person ... days?

Cleopas uses this question to show his surprise that this man appears not to know about the things that have happened in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "You must be the only person ... days."

Are you

Here "you" is singular.

Luke 24:19

What things

"What things have happened" or "What things have taken place"

a prophet, mighty in deed and word before God and all the people

This means that God caused Jesus to be mighty and that the people saw that he was mighty. Alternate translation: "a prophet to whom God gave power to do and teach great things that were amazing to all the people"

Luke 24:20

delivered him up

"gave him over"

to be condemned to death and crucified him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "in order for the governor to put Jesus to death by crucifying him"

Luke 24:21

Connecting Statement:

The two men continue responding to Jesus.

But we hoped that he was the one

Here the word "hope" means "expect" or "think" that

something might be true. By saying "we hoped" the two men show that they no longer think that Jesus is the one who will redeem Israel. Alternate translation: "But we thought that he might be the one"

who was going to redeem Israel

The Romans ruled over the Jews. Alternate translation:

"who would free the Israelites from our Roman enemies"

Yes, and what is more,

This introduces another reason why they believed Jesus would not free Israel. Alternate translation: "Now that does not seem possible because"

the third day

The Jews counted any portion of a day as a day. Therefore, the day Jesus was raised was the "third day" because it followed the day of his burial and the Sabbath day. See how you translated this in [Luke 24:7]

since all these things happened

"since all the many actions that led up to the death of Jesus have taken place"

Luke 24:22

But also

This introduces another reason why it the men did not understand what was happening concerning Jesus.

of our company

"in our group"

having been at the tomb

The women were the ones who were at the tomb.

Luke 24:23

a vision of angels

"angels in a vision"

Luke 24:24

Connecting Statement:

The two men finish responding to Jesus.

they did not see him

"they did not see Jesus"

Luke 24:25

Jesus said to them

Jesus is speaking to the two disciples.

slow of heart to believe

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind. Alternate translation: "your minds are slow to believe" or "you are slow to believe"

Luke 24:26

Was it not necessary ... glory?

Jesus uses a question to remind the disciples about what the prophets said. Alternate translation: "It was necessary ... glory."

to enter into his glory

This refers to Jesus beginning to rule and to receive honor and glory.

Luke 24:27

beginning from Moses

Moses wrote the first books of the Bible. Alternate translation: "beginning with the writings of Moses"

Jesus interpreted to them

"Jesus explained to them"

Luke 24:28

Jesus acted as though he were going further

The two men understood from his actions that he was going

on to another destination. Perhaps he kept walking on the road when they turned off to enter the gate into the village. There is no indication that Jesus deceived them with words. Luke 24:29

they compelled him

You may need to make explicit what they compelled him to do. This is probably an exaggeration to show that they needed to speak with him for a long time before they could change his mind. The word "compel" means to use physical force, but it seems that they persuaded him using only words. Alternate translation: "they were able to persuade him to stay"

it is toward evening and the day is almost over

The Jewish day ended at sundown.

Jesus went in

"Jesus entered the house"

stay with them

"stay with the two disciples"

Luke 24:30

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

the bread

This refers to bread made without yeast. It does not refer to food in general.

blessed it

"gave thanks for it" or "thanked God for it"

Luke 24:31

Then their eyes were opened

Their "eyes" represent their understanding. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then they understood" or "Then they realized"

they knew him

"they recognized him." These disciples had known him before his death.

he vanished out of their sight

This means that suddenly he was no longer there. It does not mean that he became invisible.

Luke 24:32

Was not our heart burning ... scriptures?

They use a question to emphasize how amazed they were about their encounter with Jesus. The intense feelings they had while talking to Jesus are spoken of as if they were a fire burning inside them. Alternate translation: "Our hearts were burning ... scriptures."

within us

The two men were speaking to each other. The word "us" is dual inclusive for languages that make these distinctions. while he opened to us the scriptures

Jesus did not open a book or scroll. "opened" refers to their understanding. Alternate translation: "while he explained the scriptures to us" or "while he enabled us to understand the scriptures"

Luke 24:33

Connecting Statement:

The two men go to Jerusalem to the eleven disciples to tell them about Jesus.

They rose up

"They" refers to the two men.

rose up

"got up" or "stood up"

the eleven

This refers to Jesus's apostles. Judas was no longer included with them.

Luke 24:34

saying

"and those people told the two men"

Luke 24:35

So they told

"So the two men told them"

the things that happened on the way

This refers to Jesus appearing to them while they were on their way to the village of Emmaus.

how Jesus was recognized by them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"how they recognized Jesus"

in the breaking of the bread

"when Jesus broke the bread" or "when Jesus tore the bread"

Luke 24:36

General Information:

Jesus appears to the disciples. When the two men previously arrived at the house where the Eleven were, Jesus was not with them.

Jesus himself

The word "himself" focuses on Jesus and the surprise of Jesus actually appearing to them. Most of them had not seen him after his resurrection.

in the midst of them

"among them"

Peace be to you

"May you have peace" or "May God give you peace!" The word "you" is plural.

Luke 24:37

But they were terrified

"But" indicates a strong contrast. Jesus told them to be at peace, but they were very afraid instead.

terrified and filled with fear

"startled and afraid." These two phrases mean about the same thing, and are used together to emphasize their fear.

a spirit

Here it refers to the spirit of a dead person.

Luke 24:38

Why are you troubled?

Jesus uses a question to comfort them. Alternate translation: "Do not be frightened."

Why do questions arise in your heart?

Jesus uses a question to mildly rebuke them. Jesus was telling them not to doubt that he was alive. The word "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind. Alternate translation: "Do not doubt in your minds!" or "Stop doubting!"

Luke 24:39

Touch me and see. For a spirit does not have flesh and bones, as you see me having

Jesus asks them to confirm by touch that he is not a ghost. It may be helpful to combine and reorder these two

sentences. Alternate translation: "Touch me and feel that I have flesh and bones that a ghost would not have"

flesh and bones

This is a way of referring to the physical body.

Luke 24:40

his hands and his feet

It is understood that his hands and feet contained the nail marks from his crucifixion that would prove it was really Jesus. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the wounds in his hands and his feet"

Luke 24:41

They still could not believe it because of joy

"They were so full of joy that they still could not believe it was really true"

Luke 24:42

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 24:43

ate it before them

Jesus does this to prove that he has a physical body. Spirits would not be able to eat food.

before them

"in front of them" or "while they were watching"

Luke 24:44

when I was with you

"when I was with you before"

all that was written ... Psalms must be fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God would fulfill all that was written ... Psalms" or "God would cause all that was written ... Psalms to happen"

all that was written in the law of Moses and the Prophets and the Psalms

The words "law of Moses," "the Prophets," and "the Psalms" are proper names for parts of the Hebrew Bible. This can be stated in active form and using common nouns.

Alternate translation: "all that Moses wrote in the law, all that the prophets wrote, and all that the writers of the Psalms wrote about me"

Luke 24:45

Then he opened their minds, that they might understand the scriptures  
To "open the mind" is an idiom that means to enable someone to understand. Alternate translation: "Then he enabled them to understand the scriptures"

Luke 24:46

Thus it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This is what people long ago wrote"

rise again from the dead

In this verse the words "rise again" mean "come alive again." The words "the dead" speak of all dead people together in the underworld.

the third day

The Jews counted any portion of a day as a day. Therefore, the day Jesus was raised was the "third day" because it followed the day of his burial and the Sabbath day. See how you translated this in [Luke 24:7]

Luke 24:47

Repentance and forgiveness of sins should be preached in his name to all the nations

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"Followers of the Christ should preach to people in all the nations that they need to repent and that they need God to forgive their sins through Jesus"

in his name

His "name" here refers to his authority. Alternate translation: "by the Christ's authority"

all the nations

"all the ethnic communities" or "all the people groups"

beginning from Jerusalem

"starting in Jerusalem"

Luke 24:48

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the disciples.

You are witnesses

"You are to tell others that what you saw about me is true."

The disciples had observed Jesus's life, death, and resurrection and could describe to other people what he did.

Luke 24:49

I am sending you what my Father promised

"I will give you what my Father promised to give you." God had promised to give the Holy Spirit. The UDB makes this explicit.

Father

This is an important title for God.

you are clothed with power

God's power will cover them in the same way that clothes cover a person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you receive power"

from on high

"from above" or "from God"

Luke 24:50

Jesus led them out

"Jesus led the disciples outside the city"

He lifted up his hands

This was the action that priests performed when they blessed the people.

Luke 24:51

It happened

"It came about." This introduces a new event in the story.

while he was blessing them

"while Jesus was asking God to do good to them"

was carried

Since Luke does not specify who carried Jesus up, we do not know if it was God himself or one or more angels. If your language would have to specify who did the carrying, it would be better to use "went" instead, as the UDB does.

Luke 24:52

General Information:

These verses tell us about the ongoing actions of the disciples as the story ends.

they worshiped him

"the disciples worshiped Jesus"

and returned

"and then returned"

Luke 24:53

continually in the temple

This is an exaggeration to express that they went into the

temple courtyard every day.  
in the temple  
Only priests were allowed into the temple building.

Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard"  
blessing God  
"praising God"

---